

Package ‘ComplexHeatmap’

November 20, 2024

Type Package

Title Make Complex Heatmaps

Version 2.22.0

Date 2024-09-24

Depends R (>= 3.5.0), methods, grid, graphics, stats, grDevices

Imports circlize (>= 0.4.14), GetoptLong, colorspace, clue,
RColorBrewer, GlobalOptions (>= 0.1.0), png, digest, IRanges,
matrixStats, foreach, doParallel, codetools

Suggests testthat (>= 1.0.0), knitr, markdown, dendsort, jpeg, tiff,
fastcluster, EnrichedHeatmap, dendextend (>= 1.0.1), grImport,
grImport2, glue, GenomicRanges, gridtext, pheatmap (>= 1.0.12),
gridGraphics, gplots, rmarkdown, Cairo, magick

VignetteBuilder knitr

Description Complex heatmaps are efficient to visualize associations
between different sources of data sets and reveal potential patterns.
Here the ComplexHeatmap package provides a highly flexible way to arrange
multiple heatmaps and supports various annotation graphics.

biocViews Software, Visualization, Sequencing

URL <https://github.com/jokergoo/ComplexHeatmap>,
<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/>

License MIT + file LICENSE

git_url <https://git.bioconductor.org/packages/ComplexHeatmap>

git_branch RELEASE_3_20

git_last_commit bf351d6

git_last_commit_date 2024-10-29

Repository Bioconductor 3.20

Date/Publication 2024-11-20

Author Zuguang Gu [aut, cre] (<<https://orcid.org/0000-0002-7395-8709>>)

Maintainer Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Contents

| | |
|---|----|
| ComplexHeatmap-package | 7 |
| +.AdditiveUnit | 8 |
| AdditiveUnit | 9 |
| AdditiveUnit-class | 9 |
| add_heatmap-dispatch | 10 |
| add_heatmap-Heatmap-method | 10 |
| add_heatmap-HeatmapAnnotation-method | 11 |
| add_heatmap-HeatmapList-method | 12 |
| adjust_dend_by_x | 12 |
| adjust_heatmap_list-HeatmapList-method | 13 |
| alter_graphic | 14 |
| AnnotationFunction | 15 |
| AnnotationFunction-class | 16 |
| annotation_axis_grob | 17 |
| annotation_legend_size-HeatmapList-method | 19 |
| anno_barplot | 20 |
| anno_block | 22 |
| anno_boxplot | 24 |
| anno_customize | 25 |
| anno_density | 26 |
| anno_empty | 27 |
| anno_histogram | 29 |
| anno_horizon | 30 |
| anno_image | 31 |
| anno_joyplot | 32 |
| anno_lines | 33 |
| anno_link | 35 |
| anno_mark | 35 |
| anno_numeric | 37 |
| anno_oncoprint_barplot | 38 |
| anno_points | 39 |
| anno_simple | 40 |
| anno_summary | 41 |
| anno_text | 43 |
| anno_textbox | 44 |
| anno_zoom | 45 |
| attach_annotation-Heatmap-method | 46 |
| bar3D | 47 |
| bin_genome | 48 |
| c.ColorMapping | 48 |
| c.HeatmapAnnotation | 49 |
| cluster_between_groups | 49 |
| cluster_within_group | 50 |
| ColorMapping | 51 |
| ColorMapping-class | 52 |
| color_mapping_legend-ColorMapping-method | 52 |
| columnAnnotation | 54 |
| column_dend-dispatch | 55 |
| column_dend-Heatmap-method | 55 |
| column_dend-HeatmapList-method | 56 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| column_order-dispatch | 57 |
| column_order-Heatmap-method | 57 |
| column_order-HeatmapList-method | 58 |
| comb_degree | 59 |
| comb_name | 60 |
| comb_size | 60 |
| compare_heatmap | 61 |
| compare_heatmap.2 | 61 |
| compare_pheatmap | 62 |
| complement_size | 63 |
| component_height-dispatch | 63 |
| component_height-Heatmap-method | 64 |
| component_height-HeatmapList-method | 64 |
| component_width-dispatch | 65 |
| component_width-Heatmap-method | 66 |
| component_width-HeatmapList-method | 66 |
| copy_all-AnnotationFunction-method | 67 |
| copy_all-dispatch | 68 |
| copy_all-SingleAnnotation-method | 68 |
| decorate_annotation | 69 |
| decorate_column_dend | 70 |
| decorate_column_names | 70 |
| decorate_column_title | 71 |
| decorate_dend | 72 |
| decorate_dimnames | 73 |
| decorate_heatmap_body | 74 |
| decorate_row_dend | 75 |
| decorate_row_names | 75 |
| decorate_row_title | 76 |
| decorate_title | 77 |
| default_axis_param | 78 |
| default_get_type | 78 |
| dendrogramGrob | 79 |
| dend_heights | 80 |
| dend_xy | 80 |
| densityHeatmap | 81 |
| dim.Heatmap | 83 |
| dist2 | 84 |
| draw-AnnotationFunction-method | 84 |
| draw-dispatch | 85 |
| draw-Heatmap-method | 86 |
| draw-HeatmapAnnotation-method | 87 |
| draw-HeatmapList-method | 88 |
| draw-Legends-method | 93 |
| draw-SingleAnnotation-method | 94 |
| draw_annotation-Heatmap-method | 95 |
| draw_annotation_legend-HeatmapList-method | 96 |
| draw_dend-Heatmap-method | 97 |
| draw_dimnames-Heatmap-method | 98 |
| draw_heatmap_body-Heatmap-method | 99 |
| draw_heatmap_legend-HeatmapList-method | 100 |
| draw_heatmap_list-HeatmapList-method | 101 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| draw_title-dispatch | 101 |
| draw_title-Heatmap-method | 102 |
| draw_title-HeatmapList-method | 103 |
| extract_comb | 103 |
| frequencyHeatmap | 104 |
| full_comb_code | 106 |
| getXY_in_parent_vp | 106 |
| get_color_mapping_list-HeatmapAnnotation-method | 107 |
| get_legend_param_list-HeatmapAnnotation-method | 108 |
| grid.annotation_axis | 108 |
| grid.boxplot | 109 |
| grid.dendrogram | 110 |
| grid.draw.Legends | 111 |
| grid.textbox | 111 |
| gt_render | 112 |
| Heatmap | 113 |
| Heatmap-class | 119 |
| Heatmap3D | 120 |
| HeatmapAnnotation | 121 |
| HeatmapAnnotation-class | 123 |
| HeatmapList | 124 |
| HeatmapList-class | 124 |
| heatmap_legend_size-HeatmapList-method | 125 |
| height.AnnotationFunction | 126 |
| height.Heatmap | 126 |
| height.HeatmapAnnotation | 127 |
| height.HeatmapList | 128 |
| height.Legends | 128 |
| height.SingleAnnotation | 129 |
| heightAssign.AnnotationFunction | 129 |
| heightAssign.HeatmapAnnotation | 130 |
| heightAssign.SingleAnnotation | 130 |
| heightDetails.annotation_axis | 131 |
| heightDetails.legend | 132 |
| heightDetails.legend_body | 132 |
| heightDetails.packed_legends | 133 |
| heightDetails.textbox | 133 |
| ht_global_opt | 134 |
| ht_opt | 134 |
| ht_size | 136 |
| is_abs_unit | 137 |
| Legend | 137 |
| Legends | 140 |
| Legends-class | 140 |
| length.HeatmapAnnotation | 141 |
| length.HeatmapList | 141 |
| list_components | 142 |
| list_to_matrix | 142 |
| make_column_cluster-Heatmap-method | 143 |
| make_comb_mat | 144 |
| make_layout-dispatch | 146 |
| make_layout-Heatmap-method | 146 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| make_layout-HeatmapList-method | 147 |
| make_row_cluster-Heatmap-method | 151 |
| map_to_colors-ColorMapping-method | 152 |
| max_text_height | 153 |
| max_text_width | 154 |
| merge_dendrogram | 155 |
| names.HeatmapAnnotation | 156 |
| names.HeatmapList | 156 |
| namesAssign.HeatmapAnnotation | 157 |
| ncol.Heatmap | 157 |
| nobs.AnnotationFunction | 158 |
| nobs.HeatmapAnnotation | 158 |
| nobs.SingleAnnotation | 159 |
| normalize_comb_mat | 159 |
| normalize_genomic_signals_to_bins | 160 |
| nrow.Heatmap | 162 |
| oncoPrint | 163 |
| order.comb_mat | 165 |
| packLegend | 166 |
| pheatmap | 167 |
| pindex | 170 |
| plot.Heatmap | 171 |
| plot.HeatmapAnnotation | 172 |
| plot.HeatmapList | 172 |
| prepare-Heatmap-method | 173 |
| print.comb_mat | 174 |
| restore_matrix | 174 |
| re_size-HeatmapAnnotation-method | 176 |
| rowAnnotation | 177 |
| row_anno_barplot | 177 |
| row_anno_boxplot | 178 |
| row_anno_density | 179 |
| row_anno_histogram | 179 |
| row_anno_points | 180 |
| row_anno_text | 181 |
| row_dend-dispatch | 181 |
| row_dend-Heatmap-method | 182 |
| row_dend-HeatmapList-method | 182 |
| row_order-dispatch | 183 |
| row_order-Heatmap-method | 184 |
| row_order-HeatmapList-method | 184 |
| set_component_height-Heatmap-method | 185 |
| set_component_width-Heatmap-method | 186 |
| set_name | 187 |
| set_nameAssign | 187 |
| set_size | 188 |
| show-AnnotationFunction-method | 188 |
| show-ColorMapping-method | 189 |
| show-dispatch | 190 |
| show-Heatmap-method | 190 |
| show-HeatmapAnnotation-method | 191 |
| show-HeatmapList-method | 192 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| show-SingleAnnotation-method | 192 |
| SingleAnnotation | 193 |
| SingleAnnotation-class | 195 |
| size.AnnotationFunction | 196 |
| size.HeatmapAnnotation | 197 |
| size.SingleAnnotation | 197 |
| sizeAssign.AnnotationFunction | 198 |
| sizeAssign.HeatmapAnnotation | 198 |
| sizeAssign.SingleAnnotation | 199 |
| smartAlign2 | 200 |
| str.comb_mat | 201 |
| subset_gp | 201 |
| subset_matrix_by_row | 202 |
| subset_no | 202 |
| subset_vector | 203 |
| summary.Heatmap | 203 |
| summary.HeatmapList | 204 |
| t.comb_mat | 204 |
| test_alter_fun | 205 |
| textbox_grob | 205 |
| unify_mat_list | 207 |
| UpSet | 207 |
| upset_left_annotation | 210 |
| upset_right_annotation | 211 |
| upset_top_annotation | 212 |
| width.AnnotationFunction | 213 |
| width.Heatmap | 214 |
| width.HeatmapAnnotation | 214 |
| width.HeatmapList | 215 |
| width.Legends | 215 |
| width.SingleAnnotation | 216 |
| widthAssign.AnnotationFunction | 216 |
| widthAssign.HeatmapAnnotation | 217 |
| widthAssign.SingleAnnotation | 217 |
| widthDetails.annotation_axis | 218 |
| widthDetails.legend | 219 |
| widthDetails.legend_body | 219 |
| widthDetails.packed_legends | 220 |
| widthDetails.textbox | 220 |
| [.AnnotationFunction | 221 |
| [.comb_mat | 221 |
| [.gridtext | 222 |
| [.Heatmap | 223 |
| [.HeatmapAnnotation | 223 |
| [.HeatmapList | 224 |
| [.SingleAnnotation | 225 |
| %v% | 225 |

ComplexHeatmap-package

Make complex heatmaps

Description

Make complex heatmaps

Details

This package aims to provide a simple and flexible way to arrange multiple heatmaps as well as flexible annotation graphics.

The package is implemented in an object-oriented way. The heatmap lists are abstracted into several classes.

- [Heatmap-class](#): a single heatmap containing heatmap body, row/column names, titles, dendrograms and annotations.
- [HeatmapList-class](#): a list of heatmaps and annotations.
- [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#): a list of row/column annotations.

There are also several internal classes:

- [SingleAnnotation-class](#): a single row annotation or column annotation.
- [ColorMapping-class](#): mapping from values to colors.
- [AnnotationFunction-class](#): construct an annotation function which allows subsetting.

Following two high-level functions take use of functionality of complex heatmaps:

- [oncoPrint](#): oncoPrint plot which visualize genomic alterations in a set of genes.
- [densityHeatmap](#): use heatmaps to visualize density distributions.

The complete reference of ComplexHeatmap package is available at <http://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book>.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

`+.AdditiveUnit`*Horizontally Add Heatmaps or Annotations to a Heatmap List*

Description

Horizontally Add Heatmaps or Annotations to a Heatmap List

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'AdditiveUnit'  
x + y
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|---|
| <code>x</code> | A Heatmap-class object, a HeatmapAnnotation-class object or a HeatmapList-class object. |
| <code>y</code> | A Heatmap-class object, a HeatmapAnnotation-class object or a HeatmapList-class object. |

Details

It is only a helper function. It actually calls [add_heatmap, Heatmap-method](#), [add_heatmap, HeatmapList-method](#) or [add_heatmap, HeatmapAnnotation-method](#) depending on the class of the input objects.

The [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object to be added should only be row annotations. Column annotations should be added to the heatmap list by `%v%`.

`x` and `y` can also be NULL.

Value

A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

`%v%` operator is used for vertical heatmap list.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|--------------|--|
| AdditiveUnit | <i>Constructor Method for AdditiveUnit Class</i> |
|--------------|--|

Description

Constructor Method for AdditiveUnit Class

Usage

```
AdditiveUnit(...)
```

Arguments

... Black hole arguments.

Details

This method is not used in the package.

Value

No value is returned.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| AdditiveUnit-class | <i>Class for Concatenating Heatmaps and Annotations</i> |
|--------------------|---|

Description

Class for Concatenating Heatmaps and Annotations

Details

This class is a super class for [Heatmap-class](#), [HeatmapList-class](#) and [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) classes. It is only designed for + generic method and the %v%v method so that above three classes can be appended to each other.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

add_heatmap-dispatch *Method dispatch page for add_heatmap*

Description

Method dispatch page for add_heatmap.

Dispatch

add_heatmap can be dispatched on following classes:

- [add_heatmap, HeatmapAnnotation-method, HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) class method
- [add_heatmap, Heatmap-method, Heatmap-class](#) class method
- [add_heatmap, HeatmapList-method, HeatmapList-class](#) class method

Examples

```
# no example
NULL
```

add_heatmap-Heatmap-method
Add Heatmap to the Heatmap List

Description

Add Heatmap to the Heatmap List

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
add_heatmap(object, x, direction = c("horizontal", "vertical"))
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|---|
| object | A Heatmap-class object. |
| x | a Heatmap-class object, a HeatmapAnnotation-class object or a HeatmapList-class object. |
| direction | Whether the heatmap is added horizontal or vertically? |

Details

Normally we directly use + for horizontal concatenation and %v% for vertical concatenation.

Value

A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

add_heatmap-HeatmapAnnotation-method

Add Annotations or Heatmaps as a Heatmap List

Description

Add Annotations or Heatmaps as a Heatmap List

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapAnnotation'
add_heatmap(object, x, direction = c("horizontal", "vertical"))
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|---|
| object | A HeatmapAnnotation-class object. |
| x | A Heatmap-class object, a HeatmapAnnotation-class object or a HeatmapList-class object. |
| direction | Whether it is horizontal list or a vertical list? |

Details

Normally we directly use + for horizontal concatenation and %v% for vertical concatenation.

Value

A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

add_heatmap-HeatmapList-method

Add heatmaps and row annotations to the heatmap list

Description

Add heatmaps and row annotations to the heatmap list

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'
add_heatmap(object, x, direction = c("horizontal", "vertical"))
```

Arguments

object a [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

x a [Heatmap-class](#) object or a [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object or a [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

direction direction of the concatenation.

Details

There is a shortcut function `+.AdditiveUnit`.

Value

A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

adjust_dend_by_x

Adjust the Positions of nodes/leaves in the Dendrogram

Description

Adjust the Positions of nodes/leaves in the Dendrogram

Usage

```
adjust_dend_by_x(dend, leaf_pos = 1:nobs(dend)-0.5)
```

Arguments

dend A [dendrogram](#) object.
leaf_pos A vector of positions of leaves. The value can also be a [unit](#) object.

Details

The positions of nodes stored as x attribute are recalculated based on the new positions of leaves.
By default, the position of leaves are at 0.5, 1.5, ..., n-0.5.

Examples

```
m = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
dend = as.dendrogram(hclust(dist(m)))
dend = adjust_dend_by_x(dend, sort(runif(10)))
str(dend)
dend = adjust_dend_by_x(dend, unit(1:10, "cm"))
str(dend)
```

adjust_heatmap_list-HeatmapList-method
Adjust Heatmap List

Description

Adjust Heatmap List

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'
adjust_heatmap_list(object)
```

Arguments

object A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

Details

This function adjusts settings in all other heatmaps according to the main heatmap. It also adjust the size of heatmap annotations to make them aligned nicely.

This function is only for internal use.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|---------------|---|
| alter_graphic | <i>Automatically generate alter_fun</i> |
|---------------|---|

Description

Automatically generate alter_fun

Usage

```
alter_graphic(graphic = c("rect", "point"),
              width = 1, height = 1,
              horiz_margin = unit(1, "pt"), vertical_margin = unit(1, "pt"),
              fill = "red", col = NA, pch = 16, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| graphic | Graphic to draw. |
| width | Relative width of the rectangle. |
| height | Relative height of the rectangle. |
| horiz_margin | Horizontal margin. E.g. if you want 1mm margin on top and 1mm margin at bottom of the rectangle, set this value to <code>unit(1, 'mm')</code> . |
| vertical_margin | Vertical margin. |
| fill | Filled color. |
| col | Border color. |
| pch | Pch for points |
| ... | Pass to gpar |

Details

This function aims to simplify the definition of functions in alter_fun. Now it only supports rectangles and points.

Examples

```
mat = read.table(textConnection(
  "s1,s2,s3
  g1,snv;indel,snv,indel
  g2,,snv;indel,snv
  g3,snv,,indel;snv"), row.names = 1, header = TRUE, sep = ",", stringsAsFactors = FALSE)
mat = as.matrix(mat)
col = c(snv = "red", indel = "blue")

oncoPrint(mat,
  alter_fun = list(
    snv = alter_graphic("rect", width = 0.9, height = 0.9, fill = col["snv"]),
    indel = alter_graphic("rect", width = 0.9, height = 0.9, fill = col["indel"])
  ), col = col)
```

AnnotationFunction *Constructor of AnnotationFunction Class*

Description

Constructor of AnnotationFunction Class

Usage

```
AnnotationFunction(fun, fun_name = "", which = c("column", "row"), cell_fun = NULL,
  var_import = list(), n = NA, data_scale = c(0, 1), subset_rule = list(),
  substable = length(subset_rule) > 0, show_name = TRUE, width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|--|
| fun | A function which defines how to draw the annotation. See Details section. |
| fun_name | The name of the function. It is only used for printing the object. |
| which | Whether it is drawn as a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| cell_fun | A simplified version of fun. cell_fun only accepts one single index and it draws repeatedly in each annotation cell. |
| var_import | The names of the variables or the variable themselves that the annotation function depends on. See Details section. |
| n | Number of observations in the annotation. It is not mandatory, but it is better to provide this information so that the higher order HeatmapAnnotation knows it and it can perform check on the consistency of annotations and heatmaps. |
| data_scale | The data scale on the data axis (y-axis for column annotation and x-axis for row annotation). It is only used when decorate_annotation is used with "native" unit coordinates. |
| subset_rule | The rule of subsetting variables in var_import. It should be set when users want the final object to be substable. See Details section. |
| substable | Whether the object is substable? |
| show_name | It is used to turn off the drawing of annotation names in HeatmapAnnotation . Annotations always have names associated and normally they will be drawn beside the annotation graphics to tell what the annotation is about. e.g. the annotation names put beside the points annotation graphics. However, for some of the annotations, the names are not necessarily to be drawn, such as text annotations drawn by anno_text or an empty annotation drawn by anno_empty . In this case, when show_names is set to FALSE, there will be no annotation names drawn for the annotation. |
| width | The width of the plotting region (the viewport) that the annotation is drawn. If it is a row annotation, the width must be an absolute unit. Since the AnnotationFunction object is always contained by the SingleAnnotation-class object, you can only set the width of row annotations or height of column annotations, while e.g. the height of the row annotation is always <code>unit(1, "npc")</code> which means it always fully filled in the parent SingleAnnotation and only in SingleAnnotation or even HeatmapAnnotation can adjust the height of the row annotations. |
| height | The height of the plotting region (the viewport) that the annotation is drawn. If it is a column annotation, the width must be an absolute unit. |

Details

In the package, we have implemented quite a lot of annotation functions by `AnnotationFunction` constructor: `anno_empty`, `anno_image`, `anno_points`, `anno_lines`, `anno_barplot`, `anno_boxplot`, `anno_histogram`, `anno_density`, `anno_joyplot`, `anno_horizon`, `anno_text` and `anno_mark`. These built-in annotation functions support as both row annotations and column annotations and they are all subsettable.

The built-in annotation functions are already enough for most of the analysis, nevertheless, if users want to know more about how to construct the `AnnotationFunction` class manually, they can refer to <https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#implement-new-annotation-functions>.

Value

A `AnnotationFunction-class` object which can be used in `HeatmapAnnotation`.

Examples

```
x = 1:10
anno1 = AnnotationFunction(
  fun = function(index, k, n) {
    n = length(index)
    pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0.5, n + 0.5), yscale = c(0, 10)))
    grid.rect()
    grid.points(1:n, x[index], default.units = "native")
    if(k == 1) grid.yaxis()
    popViewport()
  },
  var_import = list(x = x),
  n = 10,
  subsettable = TRUE,
  height = unit(2, "cm")
)
m = rbind(1:10, 11:20)
Heatmap(m, top_annotation = HeatmapAnnotation(foo = anno1))
Heatmap(m, top_annotation = HeatmapAnnotation(foo = anno1), column_km = 2)
```

AnnotationFunction-class

The AnnotationFunction Class

Description

The `AnnotationFunction` Class

Details

The heatmap annotation is basically graphics aligned to the heatmap columns or rows. There is no restriction for the graphic types, e.g. it can be heatmap-like annotation or points. Here the `AnnotationFunction` class is designed for creating complex and flexible annotation graphics. As the main part of the class, it uses a user-defined function to define the graphics. It also keeps information of the size of the plotting regions of the annotation. And most importantly, it allows subsetting to the annotation to draw a subset of the graphics, which is the base for the splitting of the annotations.

See `AnnotationFunction` constructor for details.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

annotation_axis_grob *Grob for Annotation Axis*

Description

Grob for Annotation Axis

Usage

```
annotation_axis_grob(at = NULL, labels = at, labels_rot = 0, gp = gpar(),
  side = "left", facing = "outside", direction = "normal", scale = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| at | Break values. If it is not specified, it is inferred from data scale in current viewport. |
| labels | Corresponding labels. |
| labels_rot | Rotations of labels. |
| gp | Graphic parameters. |
| side | side of the axis of the annotation viewport. |
| facing | Facing of the axis. |
| direction | Direction of the axis. Value should be "normal" or "reverse". |
| scale | The data scale. If it is NULL, it is inferred from current viewport. |

Value

A [grob](#) object.

Examples

```
gb = annotation_axis_grob(at = 1:5, labels = month.name[1:5], labels_rot = 0,
  side = "left", facing = "outside")
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "left", facing = "outside"')
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()

gb = annotation_axis_grob(at = 1:5, labels = month.name[1:5], labels_rot = 0,
  side = "left", facing = "inside")
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "left", facing = "inside"')
```

```
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()

gb = annotation_axis_grob(at = 1:5, labels = month.name[1:5], labels_rot = 0,
  side = "right", facing = "outside")
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "right", facing = "outside"')
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()

gb = annotation_axis_grob(at = 1:5, labels = month.name[1:5], labels_rot = 0,
  side = "right", facing = "inside")
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "right", facing = "inside"')
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()

gb = annotation_axis_grob(at = 1:3, labels = month.name[1:3], labels_rot = 0,
  side = "top", facing = "outside")
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "top", facing = "outside"')
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()

gb = annotation_axis_grob(at = 1:3, labels = month.name[1:3], labels_rot = 90,
  side = "top", facing = "outside")
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "top", facing = "outside"')
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()

gb = annotation_axis_grob(at = 1:3, labels = month.name[1:3], labels_rot = 45,
  side = "top", facing = "outside")
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "top", facing = "outside"')
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()

gb = annotation_axis_grob(at = 1:3, labels = month.name[1:3], labels_rot = 0,
  side = "top", facing = "inside")
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "top", facing = "inside"')
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()
```

```

gb = annotation_axis_grob(at = 1:3, labels = month.name[1:3], labels_rot = 0,
  side = "bottom", facing = "outside")
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "bottom", facing = "outside"')
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()

gb = annotation_axis_grob(at = 1:3, labels = month.name[1:3], labels_rot = 0,
  side = "bottom", facing = "inside")
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "bottom", facing = "inside"')
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()

grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
gb = annotation_axis_grob(labels_rot = 0, side = "left", facing = "outside")
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "left", facing = "outside"')
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()

grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
gb = annotation_axis_grob(side = "left", direction = "reverse")
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "left", direction = "reverse"')
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()

grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 4), yscale = c(0, 6), width = 0.6, height = 0.6))
gb = annotation_axis_grob(side = "bottom", direction = "reverse")
grid.rect()
grid.text('side = "bottom", directio = "reverse"')
grid.draw(gb)
popViewport()

```

annotation_legend_size-HeatmapList-method

Size of the Annotation Legends

Description

Size of the Annotation Legends

Usage

```

## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'
annotation_legend_size(object, legend_list = list(), ...)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|--|
| object | a HeatmapList-class object. |
| legend_list | A list of self-defined legend, should be wrapped into grob objects. It is normally constructed by Legend . |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

Internally, all annotation legends are packed by [packLegend](#) as a single [grob](#) object.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

A [unit](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

anno_barplot

Barplot Annotation

Description

Barplot Annotation

Usage

```
anno_barplot(x, baseline = 0, which = c("column", "row"), border = TRUE, bar_width = 0.6,
  beside = FALSE, attach = FALSE,
  gp = gpar(fill = "#CCCCCC"), ylim = NULL, extend = 0.05, axis = TRUE,
  axis_param = default_axis_param(which),
  add_numbers = FALSE, numbers_gp = gpar(fontsize = 8),
  numbers_rot = ifelse(which == "column", 45, 0), numbers_offset = unit(2, "mm"),
  width = NULL, height = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|---|
| x | The value vector. The value can be a vector or a matrix. The length of the vector or the number of rows of the matrix is taken as the number of the observations of the annotation. If x is a vector, the barplots will be represented as stacked barplots. |
| baseline | baseline of bars. The value should be "min" or "max", or a numeric value. It is enforced to be zero for stacked barplots. |

| | |
|----------------|---|
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| border | Whether draw borders of the annotation region? |
| bar_width | Relative width of the bars. The value should be smaller than one. |
| beside | When x is a matrix, will bars be positioned beside each other or as stacked bars? |
| attach | When beside is TRUE, it controls whether bars should be attached. |
| gp | Graphic parameters for bars. The length of each graphic parameter can be 1, length of x if x is a vector, or number of columns of x if x is a matrix. |
| ylim | Data ranges. By default it is range(x) if x is a vector, or range(rowSums(x)) if x is a matrix. |
| extend | The extension to both side of ylim. The value is a percent value corresponding to ylim[2] - ylim[1]. |
| axis | Whether to add axis? |
| axis_param | parameters for controlling axis. See default_axis_param for all possible settings and default parameters. |
| add_numbers | Whether to add numbers to the bars. It only works when x is a simple vector. |
| numbers_gp | Graphics parameters for the numbers. |
| numbers_rot | Rotation of numbers. |
| numbers_offset | Offset to the default positions (1mm away the top of the bars). |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Value

An annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

See Also

https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#barplot_annotation

Examples

```
anno = anno_barplot(1:10)
draw(anno, test = "a vector")

m = matrix(runif(4*10), nc = 4)
m = t(apply(m, 1, function(x) x/sum(x)))
anno = anno_barplot(m, gp = gpar(fill = 2:5), bar_width = 1, height = unit(6, "cm"))
draw(anno, test = "proportion matrix")
```

anno_block

Block annotation

Description

Block annotation

Usage

```
anno_block(align_to = NULL, gp = gpar(), labels = NULL, labels_gp = gpar(),
           labels_rot = ifelse(which == "row", 90, 0),
           labels_offset = unit(0.5, "npc"), labels_just = "center",
           which = c("column", "row"), width = NULL, height = NULL, show_name = FALSE,
           panel_fun = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|---|
| align_to | If you don't want to create block annotation for all slices, you can specify a list of indices that cover continuously adjacent rows or columns. |
| gp | Graphic parameters. |
| labels | Labels put on blocks. |
| labels_gp | Graphic parameters for labels. |
| labels_rot | Rotation for labels. |
| labels_offset | Positions of the labels. It controls offset on y-directions for column annotation and on x-direction for row annotation. |
| labels_just | Justification of the labels. |
| which | Is it a row annotation or a column annotation? |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |
| show_name | Whether show annotation name. |
| panel_fun | A self-defined function that draws graphics in each slice. It must have two arguments: 1. row/column indices for the current slice and 2. a vector of levels from the split variable that correspond to current slice. When graphics is set, all other graphics parameters in anno_block are ignored. |

Details

The block annotation is used for representing slices. The length of all arguments should be 1 or the number of slices.

Value

An annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#block-annotation>

Examples

```
Heatmap(matrix(rnorm(100), 10),
  top_annotation = HeatmapAnnotation(foo = anno_block(gp = gpar(fill = 2:4),
    labels = c("group1", "group2", "group3"), labels_gp = gpar(col = "white"))),
  column_km = 3,
  left_annotation = rowAnnotation(foo = anno_block(gp = gpar(fill = 2:4),
    labels = c("group1", "group2", "group3"), labels_gp = gpar(col = "white"))),
  row_km = 3)

# ===== set the panel_fun argument =====
col = c("1" = "red", "2" = "blue", "A" = "green", "B" = "orange")
Heatmap(matrix(rnorm(100), 10), row_km = 2, row_split = sample(c("A", "B"), 10, replace = TRUE)) +
rowAnnotation(foo = anno_block(
  panel_fun = function(index, levels) {
    grid.rect(gp = gpar(fill = col[levels[2]], col = "black"))
    grid.text(paste(levels, collapse = ","), 0.5, 0.5, rot = 90,
      gp = gpar(col = col[levels[1]]))
  }
))

labels = c("1" = "one", "2" = "two", "A" = "Group_A", "B" = "Group_B")
Heatmap(matrix(rnorm(100), 10), row_km = 2, row_split = sample(c("A", "B"), 10, replace = TRUE)) +
rowAnnotation(foo = anno_block(panel_fun = function(index, levels) {
  grid.rect(gp = gpar(fill = col[levels[2]], col = "black"))
  grid.text(paste(labels[levels], collapse = ","), 0.5, 0.5, rot = 90,
    gp = gpar(col = col[levels[1]]))
}))

Heatmap(matrix(rnorm(100), 10), row_km = 2, row_split = sample(c("A", "B"), 10, replace = TRUE)) +
rowAnnotation(foo = anno_block(
  panel_fun = function(index, levels) {
    grid.rect(gp = gpar(fill = col[levels[2]], col = "black"))
    txt = paste(levels, collapse = ",")
    txt = paste0(txt, "\n", length(index), " rows")
    grid.text(txt, 0.5, 0.5, rot = 0,
      gp = gpar(col = col[levels[1]]))
  },
  width = unit(3, "cm")
))

# ===== set align_to #####
col = c("foo" = "red", "bar" = "blue")
Heatmap(matrix(rnorm(100), 10), cluster_rows = FALSE) +
rowAnnotation(foo = anno_block(
  align_to = list(foo = 1:4, bar = 6:10),
  panel_fun = function(index, nm) {
    grid.rect(gp = gpar(fill = col[nm]))
    grid.text(nm, 0.5, 0.5)
  },
  width = unit(2, "cm")
)
)
```

anno_boxplot *Boxplot Annotation*

Description

Boxplot Annotation

Usage

```
anno_boxplot(x, which = c("column", "row"), border = TRUE,
             gp = gpar(fill = "#CCCCCC"), ylim = NULL, extend = 0.05, outline = TRUE, box_width = 0.6,
             add_points = FALSE, pch = 16, size = unit(4, "pt"), pt_gp = gpar(), axis = TRUE,
             axis_param = default_axis_param(which), width = NULL, height = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| x | A matrix or a list. If x is a matrix and if which is column, statistics for boxplots are calculated by columns, if which is row, the calculation is done by rows. |
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| border | Whether draw borders of the annotation region? |
| gp | Graphic parameters for the boxes. The length of the graphic parameters should be one or the number of observations. |
| ylim | Data ranges. |
| extend | The extension to both side of ylim. The value is a percent value corresponding to ylim[2] - ylim[1]. |
| outline | Whether draw outline of boxplots? |
| box_width | Relative width of boxes. The value should be smaller than one. |
| add_points | Whether add points on top of the boxes? |
| pch | Point style. |
| size | Point size. |
| pt_gp | Graphics parameters for points. |
| axis | Whether to add axis? |
| axis_param | parameters for controlling axis. See default_axis_param for all possible settings and default parameters. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Value

An annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#box-annotation>

Examples

```

set.seed(123)
m = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
anno = anno_boxplot(m, height = unit(4, "cm"))
draw(anno, test = "anno_boxplot")
anno = anno_boxplot(m, height = unit(4, "cm"), gp = gpar(fill = 1:10))
draw(anno, test = "anno_boxplot with gp")

```

| | |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| anno_customize | <i>Customized annotation</i> |
|----------------|------------------------------|

Description

Customized annotation

Usage

```

anno_customize(x, graphics = list(), which = c("column", "row"),
              border = TRUE, width = NULL, height = NULL, verbose = TRUE)

```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|--|
| x | A categorical variable. |
| graphics | A list of functions that define graphics for each level in x. |
| which | Is it a row annotation or a column annotation? |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |
| border | Whether to draw border. |
| verbose | Whether to print messages. |

Details

Functions in graphics define simple graphics drawn in each annotation cell. The function takes four arguments:

x,y Center of the annotation cell.

w,h Width and height of the annotation cell.

Value

An annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

Examples

```
x = sort(sample(letters[1:3], 10, replace = TRUE))
graphics = list(
  "a" = function(x, y, w, h) grid.points(x, y, pch = 16),
  "b" = function(x, y, w, h) grid.rect(x, y, w*0.8, h*0.8, gp = gpar(fill = "red")),
  "c" = function(x, y, w, h) grid.segments(x - 0.5*w, y - 0.5*h, x + 0.5*w, y + 0.5*h, gp = gpar(lty = 2))
)

anno = anno_customize(x, graphics = graphics)

m = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
Heatmap(m, top_annotation = HeatmapAnnotation(bar = x, foo = anno))

# Add legends for `foo`
ht = Heatmap(m, top_annotation = HeatmapAnnotation(bar = x, foo = anno))
lgd = Legend(title = "foo", at = names(graphics), graphics = graphics)
draw(ht, annotation_legend_list = list(lgd))
```

anno_density

*Density Annotation***Description**

Density Annotation

Usage

```
anno_density(x, which = c("column", "row"),
  type = c("lines", "violin", "heatmap"), xlim = NULL, max_density = NULL,
  heatmap_colors = rev(brewer.pal(name = "RdYlBu", n = 11)),
  joyplot_scale = 1, border = TRUE, gp = gpar(fill = "#CCCCCC"),
  axis = TRUE, axis_param = default_axis_param(which),
  width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|---|
| x | A matrix or a list. If x is a matrix and if which is column, statistics for boxplots are calculated by columns, if which is row, the calculation is done by rows. |
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| type | Type of graphics to represent density distribution. "lines" for normal density plot; "violine" for violin plot and "heatmap" for heatmap visualization of density distribution. |
| xlim | Range on x-axis. |
| max_density | Maximal density values in the plot. Normally you don't need to manually set it, but when you have multiple density annotations and you want to compare between them, you should manually set this argument to make density distributions are in a same scale. |
| heatmap_colors | A vector of colors for interpolating density values. |
| joyplot_scale | Relative height of density distribution. A value higher than 1 increases the height of the density distribution and the plot will be represented as so-called "joyplot". |

| | |
|------------|---|
| border | Wether draw borders of the annotation region? |
| gp | Graphic parameters for the boxes. The length of the graphic parameters should be one or the number of observations. |
| axis | Whether to add axis? |
| axis_param | parameters for controlling axis. See default_axis_param for all possible settings and default parameters. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |

Value

An annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#density-annotation>

Examples

```
m = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
anno = anno_density(m, which = "row")
draw(anno, test = "normal density")
anno = anno_density(m, which = "row", type = "violin")
draw(anno, test = "violin")
anno = anno_density(m, which = "row", type = "heatmap")
draw(anno, test = "heatmap")
anno = anno_density(m, which = "row", type = "heatmap",
  heatmap_colors = c("white", "orange"))
draw(anno, test = "heatmap, colors")
```

anno_empty

Empty Annotation

Description

Empty Annotation

Usage

```
anno_empty(which = c("column", "row"), border = TRUE, zoom = FALSE,
  width = NULL, height = NULL, show_name = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|---|
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| border | Whether draw borders of the annotation region? |
| zoom | If it is true and when the heatmap is split, the empty annotation slices will have equal height or width, and you can see the correspondance between the annotation slices and the original heatmap slices. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |
| show_name | Whether to show annotation name. |

Details

It creates an empty annotation and holds space, later users can add graphics by [decorate_annotation](#). This function is useful when users have difficulty to implement [AnnotationFunction](#) object.

In following example, an empty annotation is first created and later points are added:

```
m = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
ht = Heatmap(m, top_annotation = HeatmapAnnotation(pt = anno_empty()))
ht = draw(ht)
co = column_order(ht)[[1]]
pt_value = 1:10
decorate_annotation("pt", {
  pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0.5, ncol(mat)+0.5), yscale = range(pt_value)))
  grid.points(seq_len(ncol(mat)), pt_value[co], pch = 16, default.units = "native")
  grid.yaxis()
  popViewport()
})
```

And it is similar as using [anno_points](#):

```
Heatmap(m, top_annotation = HeatmapAnnotation(pt = anno_points(pt_value)))
```

Value

An annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#empty-annotation>

Examples

```
anno = anno_empty()
draw(anno, test = "anno_empty")
anno = anno_empty(border = FALSE)
draw(anno, test = "anno_empty without border")
```

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| anno_histogram | <i>Histogram Annotation</i> |
|----------------|-----------------------------|

Description

Histogram Annotation

Usage

```
anno_histogram(x, which = c("column", "row"), n_breaks = 11,
              border = FALSE, gp = gpar(fill = "#CCCCCC"),
              axis = TRUE, axis_param = default_axis_param(which),
              width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| x | A matrix or a list. If x is a matrix and if which is column, statistics for boxplots are calculated by columns, if which is row, the calculation is done by rows. |
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| n_breaks | Number of breaks for calculating histogram. |
| border | Whether draw borders of the annotation region? |
| gp | Graphic parameters for the boxes. The length of the graphic parameters should be one or the number of observations. |
| axis | Whether to add axis? |
| axis_param | parameters for controlling axis. See default_axis_param for all possible settings and default parameters. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |

ValueAn annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).**See Also**

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#histogram-annotation>

Examples

```
m = matrix(rnorm(1000), nc = 10)
anno = anno_histogram(t(m), which = "row")
draw(anno, test = "row histogram")
anno = anno_histogram(t(m), which = "row", gp = gpar(fill = 1:10))
draw(anno, test = "row histogram with color")
anno = anno_histogram(t(m), which = "row", n_breaks = 20)
draw(anno, test = "row histogram with color")
```

anno_horizon

Horizon chart Annotation

Description

Horizon chart Annotation

Usage

```
anno_horizon(x, which = c("column", "row"),
             gp = gpar(pos_fill = "#D73027", neg_fill = "#313695"),
             n_slice = 4, slice_size = NULL, negative_from_top = FALSE,
             normalize = TRUE, gap = unit(0, "mm"),
             axis = TRUE, axis_param = default_axis_param(which),
             width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| x | A matrix or a list. If x is a matrix or a data frame, columns correspond to observations. |
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| gp | Graphic parameters for the boxes. The length of the graphic parameters should be one or the number of observations. There are two unstandard parameters specifically for horizon chart: <code>pos_fill</code> and <code>neg_fill</code> controls the filled color for positive values and negative values. |
| n_slice | Number of slices on y-axis. |
| slice_size | Height of the slice. If the value is not NULL, <code>n_slice</code> will be recalculated. |
| negative_from_top | Whether the areas for negative values start from the top or the bottom of the plotting region? |
| normalize | Whether normalize x by <code>max(abs(x))</code> . |
| gap | Gap size of neighbouring horizon chart. |
| axis | Whether to add axis? |
| axis_param | parameters for controlling axis. See default_axis_param for all possible settings and default parameters. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |

Details

Horizon chart as row annotation is only supported.

Value

An annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#horizon-chart-annotation>

Examples

```
lt = lapply(1:20, function(x) cumprod(1 + runif(1000, -x/100, x/100)) - 1)
anno = anno_horizon(lt, which = "row")
draw(anno, test = "horizon chart")
anno = anno_horizon(lt, which = "row",
  gp = gpar(pos_fill = "orange", neg_fill = "darkgreen"))
draw(anno, test = "horizon chart, col")
anno = anno_horizon(lt, which = "row", negative_from_top = TRUE)
draw(anno, test = "horizon chart + negative_from_top")
anno = anno_horizon(lt, which = "row", gap = unit(1, "mm"))
draw(anno, test = "horizon chart + gap")
anno = anno_horizon(lt, which = "row",
  gp = gpar(pos_fill = rep(c("orange", "red"), each = 10),
  neg_fill = rep(c("darkgreen", "blue"), each = 10)))
draw(anno, test = "horizon chart, col")
```

anno_image

Image Annotation

Description

Image Annotation

Usage

```
anno_image(image, which = c("column", "row"), border = TRUE,
  gp = gpar(fill = NA, col = NA), space = unit(1, "mm"),
  width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|---|
| image | A vector of file paths of images. The format of the image is inferred from the suffix name of the image file. NA values or empty strings in the vector means no image to drawn. |
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| border | Whether draw borders of the annotation region? |
| gp | Graphic parameters for annotation grids. If the image has transparent background, the fill parameter can be used to control the background color in the annotation grids. |
| space | The space around the image to the annotation grid borders. The value should be a <code>unit</code> object. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |

Details

This function supports image formats in png, svg, pdf, eps, jpeg/jpg, tiff. png, jpeg/jpg and tiff images are imported by `readPNG`, `readJPEG` and `readTIFF`, and drawn by `grid.raster`. svg images are firstly reformatted by `rsvg::rsvg_svg` and then imported by `readPicture` and drawn by `grid.picture`. pdf and eps images are imported by `PostScriptTrace` and `readPicture`, later drawn by `grid.picture`.

Different image formats can be mixed in the image vector.

Value

An annotation function which can be used in `HeatmapAnnotation`.

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#image-annotation>

Examples

```
# download the free icons from https://github.com/Keyamoon/IcoMoon-Free
## Not run:
image = sample(dir("~/Downloads/IcoMoon-Free-master/PNG/64px", full.names = TRUE), 10)
anno = anno_image(image)
draw(anno, test = "png")
image[1:5] = ""
anno = anno_image(image)
draw(anno, test = "some of png")

## End(Not run)
```

anno_joyplot

Joyplot Annotation

Description

Joyplot Annotation

Usage

```
anno_joyplot(x, which = c("column", "row"), gp = gpar(fill = "#000000"),
  scale = 2, transparency = 0.6,
  axis = TRUE, axis_param = default_axis_param(which),
  width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>x</code> | A matrix or a list. If <code>x</code> is a matrix or a data frame, columns correspond to observations. |
| <code>which</code> | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| <code>gp</code> | Graphic parameters for the boxes. The length of the graphic parameters should be one or the number of observations. |

| | |
|--------------|---|
| scale | Relative height of the curve. A value higher than 1 increases the height of the curve. |
| transparency | Transparency of the filled colors. Value should be between 0 and 1. |
| axis | Whether to add axis? |
| axis_param | parameters for controlling axis. See default_axis_param for all possible settings and default parameters. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |

Value

An annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#joyplot-annotation>

Examples

```
m = matrix(rnorm(1000), nc = 10)
lt = apply(m, 2, function(x) data.frame(density(x)[c("x", "y")]))
anno = anno_joyplot(lt, width = unit(4, "cm"), which = "row")
draw(anno, test = "joyplot")
anno = anno_joyplot(lt, width = unit(4, "cm"), which = "row", gp = gpar(fill = 1:10))
draw(anno, test = "joyplot + col")
anno = anno_joyplot(lt, width = unit(4, "cm"), which = "row", scale = 1)
draw(anno, test = "joyplot + scale")

m = matrix(rnorm(5000), nc = 50)
lt = apply(m, 2, function(x) data.frame(density(x)[c("x", "y")]))
anno = anno_joyplot(lt, width = unit(4, "cm"), which = "row", gp = gpar(fill = NA), scale = 4)
draw(anno, test = "joyplot")
```

anno_lines

Lines Annotation

Description

Lines Annotation

Usage

```
anno_lines(x, which = c("column", "row"), border = TRUE, gp = gpar(),
  add_points = smooth, smooth = FALSE, pch = 16, size = unit(2, "mm"), pt_gp = gpar(), ylim = NULL,
  extend = 0.05, axis = TRUE, axis_param = default_axis_param(which),
  width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| x | The value vector. The value can be a vector or a matrix. The length of the vector or the number of rows of the matrix is taken as the number of the observations of the annotation. |
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| border | Whether draw borders of the annotation region? |
| gp | Graphic parameters for lines. The length of each graphic parameter can be 1, or number of columns of x is x is a matrix. |
| add_points | Whether to add points on the lines? |
| smooth | If it is TRUE, smoothing by <code>loess</code> is performed. If it is TRUE, <code>add_points</code> is set to TRUE by default. |
| pch | Point type. The length setting is the same as <code>gp</code> . |
| size | Point size, the value should be a <code>unit</code> object. The length setting is the same as <code>gp</code> . |
| pt_gp | Graphic parameters for points. The length setting is the same as <code>gp</code> . |
| ylim | Data ranges. By default it is <code>range(x)</code> . |
| extend | The extension to both side of <code>ylim</code> . The value is a percent value corresponding to <code>ylim[2] - ylim[1]</code> . |
| axis | Whether to add axis? |
| axis_param | parameters for controlling axis. See <code>default_axis_param</code> for all possible settings and default parameters. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |

Value

An annotation function which can be used in `HeatmapAnnotation`.

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#lines-annotation>

Examples

```
anno = anno_lines(runif(10))
draw(anno, test = "anno_lines")
anno = anno_lines(cbind(c(1:5, 1:5), c(5:1, 5:1)), gp = gpar(col = 2:3))
draw(anno, test = "matrix")
anno = anno_lines(cbind(c(1:5, 1:5), c(5:1, 5:1)), gp = gpar(col = 2:3),
  add_points = TRUE, pt_gp = gpar(col = 5:6), pch = c(1, 16))
draw(anno, test = "matrix")
```

anno_link

Link Annotation

Description

Link Annotation

Usage

```
anno_link(...)
```

Arguments

... Pass to [anno_zoom](#).

Details

This function is the same as [anno_zoom](#). It links subsets of rows or columns to a list of graphic regions.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

anno_mark

Link annotation with labels

Description

Link annotation with labels

Usage

```
anno_mark(at, labels, which = c("column", "row"),  
          side = ifelse(which == "column", "top", "right"),  
          lines_gp = gpar(), labels_gp = gpar(),  
          labels_rot = ifelse(which == "column", 90, 0), padding = unit(1, "mm"),  
          link_width = unit(5, "mm"), link_height = link_width,  
          link_gp = lines_gp,  
          extend = unit(0, "mm"))
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|--|
| at | Numeric index from the original matrix. |
| labels | Corresponding labels. |
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| side | Side of the labels. If it is a column annotation, valid values are "top" and "bottom"; If it is a row annotation, valid values are "left" and "right". |
| lines_gp | Please use link_gp instead. |
| link_gp | Graphic settings for the segments. |
| labels_gp | Graphic settings for the labels. |
| labels_rot | Rotations of labels, scalar. |
| padding | Padding between neighbouring labels in the plot. |
| link_width | Width of the segments. |
| link_height | Similar as link_width, used for column annotation. |
| extend | By default, the region for the labels has the same width (if it is a column annotation) or same height (if it is a row annotation) as the heatmap. The size can be extended by this options. The value can be a proportion number or a unit object. The length can be either one or two. |

Details

Sometimes there are many rows or columns in the heatmap and we want to mark some of the rows. This annotation function is used to mark these rows and connect labels and corresponding rows with links.

Value

An annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#mark-annotation>

Examples

```
anno = anno_mark(at = c(1:4, 20, 60, 97:100), labels = month.name[1:10], which = "row")
draw(anno, index = 1:100, test = "anno_mark")
```

```
m = matrix(1:1000, byrow = TRUE, nr = 100)
anno = anno_mark(at = c(1:4, 20, 60, 97:100), labels = month.name[1:10], which = "row")
Heatmap(m, cluster_rows = FALSE, cluster_columns = FALSE) + rowAnnotation(mark = anno)
Heatmap(m) + rowAnnotation(mark = anno)
```

anno_numeric *Numeric labels annotation*

Description

Numeric labels annotation

Usage

```
anno_numeric(x, rg = range(x), labels_gp = gpar(), x_convert = NULL,
  labels_format = NULL, labels_offset = unit(4, "pt"),
  bg_gp = gpar(fill = "#8080FF", col = "#8080FF"),
  bar_width = unit(1, "npc") - unit(4, "pt"),
  round_corners = TRUE, r = unit(0.05, "snpc"),
  which = c("row", "column"), align_to = "left", width = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|---|
| x | A vector of numeric values. |
| rg | Range. A numeric vector of length two. |
| labels_gp | Graphics parameters for labels. |
| x_convert | A function applied on x. E.g. when x contains p-values, to map x to the heights of bars, a transformation of $-\log_{10}(x)$ is normally applied. |
| labels_format | A function applied on x. E.g., when x is a numeric, labels_format can be set to <code>function(x) sprintf("%.2f", x)</code> . |
| labels_offset | Offset of labels to the left or right of bars. |
| bg_gp | Graphics parameters for the background bars. |
| bar_width | Width of bars. Note it corresponds to the vertical direction. |
| round_corners | Whether to draw bars with round corners? |
| r | Radius of the round corners. |
| which | Row or column. Currently it only supports row annotation. |
| align_to | Which side bars as well as the labels are aligned to. Values can be "left" or "right". If x contains both positive and negative values, align_to can also be set to 0 so that bars are aligned to $pos = 0$. |
| width | Width of the annotation. |

Examples

```
m = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
x = rnorm(10)
Heatmap(m, right_annotation = rowAnnotation(numeric = anno_numeric(x)))
```

`anno_oncoprint_barplot`*Barplot Annotation for oncoPrint*

Description

Barplot Annotation for oncoPrint

Usage

```
anno_oncoprint_barplot(type = NULL, which = c("column", "row"),
  bar_width = 0.6, beside = FALSE, ylim = NULL, show_fraction = FALSE, axis = TRUE,
  axis_param = if(which == "column") default_axis_param("column") else list(side = "top", labels_r
  width = NULL, height = NULL, border = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>type</code> | A vector of the alteration types in the data. It can be a subset of all alteration types if you don't want to show them all. |
| <code>which</code> | Is it a row annotation or a column annotation? |
| <code>bar_width</code> | Width of the bars. |
| <code>beside</code> | Will bars be stacked or be positioned beside each other? |
| <code>ylim</code> | Data range. |
| <code>show_fraction</code> | Whether to show the numbers or the fractions? |
| <code>axis</code> | Whether draw axis? |
| <code>axis_param</code> | Parameters for controlling axis. |
| <code>width</code> | Width of the annotation. |
| <code>height</code> | Height of the annotation. |
| <code>border</code> | Whether draw the border? |

Details

This annotation function should always be used with [oncoPrint](#).

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

anno_points

*Points Annotation***Description**

Points Annotation

Usage

```
anno_points(x, which = c("column", "row"), border = TRUE, gp = gpar(), pch = 16,
  size = unit(2, "mm"), ylim = NULL, extend = 0.05, axis = TRUE,
  axis_param = default_axis_param(which), width = NULL, height = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| x | The value vector. The value can be a vector or a matrix. The length of the vector or the number of rows of the matrix is taken as the number of the observations of the annotation. |
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| border | Whether draw borders of the annotation region? |
| gp | Graphic parameters for points. The length of each graphic parameter can be 1, length of x if x is a vector, or number of columns of x if x is a matrix. |
| pch | Point type. The length setting is the same as gp. |
| size | Point size, the value should be a unit object. The length setting is the same as gp. |
| ylim | Data ranges. By default it is <code>range(x)</code> . |
| extend | The extension to both side of ylim. The value is a percent value corresponding to <code>ylim[2] - ylim[1]</code> . |
| axis | Whether to add axis? |
| axis_param | parameters for controlling axis. See default_axis_param for all possible settings and default parameters. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Value

An annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#points-annotation>

Examples

```
anno = anno_points(runif(10))
draw(anno, test = "anno_points")
anno = anno_points(matrix(runif(20), nc = 2), pch = 1:2)
draw(anno, test = "matrix")
```

anno_simple

*Simple Annotation***Description**

Simple Annotation

Usage

```
anno_simple(x, col, na_col = "grey",
            which = c("column", "row"), border = FALSE, gp = gpar(),
            pch = NULL, pt_size = unit(1, "snpc")*0.8, pt_gp = gpar(),
            simple_anno_size = ht_opt$simple_anno_size,
            width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------|---|
| x | The value vector. The value can be a vector or a matrix. The length of the vector or the nrow of the matrix is taken as the number of the observations of the annotation. The value can be numeric or character and NA value is allowed. |
| col | Color that maps to x. If x is numeric and needs a continuous mapping, col should be a color mapping function which accepts a vector of values and returns a vector of colors. Normally it is generated by <code>colorRamp2</code> . If x is discrete (numeric or character) and needs a discrete color mapping, col should be a vector of colors with levels in x as vector names. If col is not specified, the color mapping is randomly generated by <code>ComplexHeatmap::default_col</code> . |
| na_col | Color for NA value. |
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| border | Whether draw borders of the annotation region? |
| gp | Graphic parameters for grid borders. The fill parameter is disabled. |
| pch | Points/symbols that are added on top of the annotation grids. The value can be numeric or single letters. It can be a vector if x is a vector and a matrix if x is a matrix. No points are drawn if the corresponding values are NA. |
| pt_size | Size of the points/symbols. It should be a <code>unit</code> object. If x is a vector, the value of pt_size can be a vector, while if x is a matrix, pt_size can only be a single value. |
| pt_gp | Graphic parameters for points/symbols. The length setting is same as pt_size. If pch is set as letters, the fontsize should be set as pt_gp = gpar(fontsize = ...). |
| simple_anno_size | size of the simple annotation. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |

Details

The "simple annotation" is the most widely used annotation type which is heatmap-like, where the grid colors correspond to the values. `anno_simple` also supports to add points/symbols on top of the grids where the it can be normal point (when `pch` is set as numbers) or letters (when `pch` is set as single letters).

Value

An annotation function which can be used in `HeatmapAnnotation`.

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#simple-annotation-as-an-annotation-function>

Examples

```
anno = anno_simple(1:10)
draw(anno, test = "a numeric vector")

anno = anno_simple(cbind(1:10, 10:1))
draw(anno, test = "a matrix")

anno = anno_simple(1:10, pch = c(1:4, NA, 6:8, NA, 10))
draw(anno, test = "pch has NA values")

anno = anno_simple(1:10, pch = c(rep("A", 5), rep(NA, 5)))
draw(anno, test = "pch has NA values")

pch = matrix(1:20, nc = 2)
pch[sample(length(pch), 10)] = NA
anno = anno_simple(cbind(1:10, 10:1), pch = pch)
draw(anno, test = "matrix, pch is a matrix with NA values")
```

anno_summary

Summary Annotation

Description

Summary Annotation

Usage

```
anno_summary(which = c("column", "row"), border = TRUE, bar_width = 0.8,
  axis = TRUE, axis_param = default_axis_param(which),
  ylim = NULL, extend = 0.05, outline = TRUE, box_width = 0.6,
  pch = 1, size = unit(2, "mm"), gp = gpar(),
  width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| border | Whether draw borders of the annotation region? |
| bar_width | Relative width of the bars. The value should be smaller than one. |
| axis | Whether to add axis? |
| axis_param | parameters for controlling axis. See default_axis_param for all possible settings and default parameters. |
| ylim | Data ranges. ylim for barplot is enforced to be <code>c(0, 1)</code> . |
| extend | The extension to both side of ylim. The value is a percent value corresponding to <code>ylim[2] - ylim[1]</code> . This argument is only for boxplot. |
| outline | Whether draw outline of boxplots? |
| box_width | Relative width of boxes. The value should be smaller than one. |
| pch | Point style. |
| size | Point size. |
| gp | Graphic parameters. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |

Details

`anno_summary` is a special annotation function that it only works for one-column or one-row heatmap. It shows the summary of the values in the heatmap. If the values in the heatmap is discrete, the proportion of each level (the sum is normalized to 1) is visualized as stacked barplot. If the heatmap is split into multiple slices, multiple bars are put in the annotation. If the value is continuous, boxplot is used.

In the barplot, the color schema is used as the same as the heatmap, while for the boxplot, the color needs to be controlled by `gp`.

Value

An annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#summary-annotation>

Examples

```
ha = HeatmapAnnotation(summary = anno_summary(height = unit(4, "cm")))
v = sample(letters[1:2], 50, replace = TRUE)
split = sample(letters[1:2], 50, replace = TRUE)
Heatmap(v, top_annotation = ha, width = unit(1, "cm"), split = split)
```

```
ha = HeatmapAnnotation(summary = anno_summary(gp = gpar(fill = 2:3), height = unit(4, "cm")))
v = rnorm(50)
Heatmap(v, top_annotation = ha, width = unit(1, "cm"), split = split)
```

| | |
|-----------|------------------------|
| anno_text | <i>Text Annotation</i> |
|-----------|------------------------|

Description

Text Annotation

Usage

```
anno_text(x, which = c("column", "row"), gp = gpar(),
          rot = guess_rot(), just = guess_just(),
          offset = guess_location(), location = guess_location(),
          width = NULL, height = NULL, show_name = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|--|
| x | A vector of text. |
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| gp | Graphic parameters. |
| rot | Rotation of the text, pass to grid.text . |
| just | Justification of text, pass to grid.text . |
| offset | Depracated, use location instead. |
| location | Position of the text. By default rot, just and location are automatically inferred according to whether it is a row annotation or column annotation. The value of location should be a unit object, normally in npc unit. E.g. <code>unit(0, 'npc')</code> means the most left of the annotation region and <code>unit(1, 'npc')</code> means the most right of the annotation region. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |
| show_name | Whether to show the annotation name. |

Value

An annotation function which can be used in [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#text-annotation>

Examples

```
anno = anno_text(month.name)
draw(anno, test = "month names")
anno = anno_text(month.name, gp = gpar(fontsize = 16))
draw(anno, test = "month names with fontsize")
anno = anno_text(month.name, gp = gpar(fontsize = 1:12+4))
```

```

draw(anno, test = "month names with changing fontsize")
anno = anno_text(month.name, which = "row")
draw(anno, test = "month names on rows")
anno = anno_text(month.name, location = 0, rot = 45,
  just = "left", gp = gpar(col = 1:12))
draw(anno, test = "with rotations")
anno = anno_text(month.name, location = 1,
  rot = 45, just = "right", gp = gpar(fontsize = 1:12+4))
draw(anno, test = "with rotations")

```

anno_textbox

*Text box annotations***Description**

Text box annotations

Usage

```

anno_textbox(align_to, text, background_gp = gpar(fill = "#DDDDDD", col = "#AAAAAA"),
  which = c("row", "column"), by = "anno_link", side = c("right", "left"), ...)

```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|--|
| align_to | It controls how the text boxes are aligned to the heatmap rows. The value can be a categorical vector which have the same length as heatmap rows, or a list of row indices. It does not necessarily include all row indices. |
| text | The corresponding texts. The value should be a list of texts. To control graphics parameters of texts in the boxes, The value of text can also be set as a list of data frames where the first column contains the text, from the second column contains graphics parameters for each text. The column names should be "col", "fontsize", "fontfamily" and "fontface". |
| background_gp | Graphics for the background. |
| which | Only "row" is allowed. |
| by | Are text boxed arranged by anno_link or by anno_block ? |
| side | Side of the annotation to the heatmap. |
| ... | Pass to textbox_grob . |

Examples

```

require(circlize)
mat = matrix(rnorm(100*10), nrow = 100)

split = sample(letters[1:10], 100, replace = TRUE)
text = lapply(unique(split), function(x) {
  data.frame(month.name, col = rand_color(12, friendly = TRUE), fontsize = runif(12, 6, 14))
})
names(text) = unique(split)

Heatmap(mat, cluster_rows = FALSE, row_split = split,
  right_annotation = rowAnnotation(wc = anno_textbox(split, text))
)

```

| | |
|-----------|------------------------|
| anno_zoom | <i>Zoom annotation</i> |
|-----------|------------------------|

Description

Zoom annotation

Usage

```
anno_zoom(align_to, panel_fun = function(index, nm = NULL) { grid.rect() },
  which = c("column", "row"), side = ifelse(which == "column", "top", "right"),
  size = NULL, gap = unit(1, "mm"),
  link_width = unit(5, "mm"), link_height = link_width, link_gp = gpar(),
  extend = unit(0, "mm"), width = NULL, height = NULL, internal_line = TRUE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|--|
| align_to | It defines how the boxes correspond to the rows or the columns in the heatmap. If the value is a list of indices, each box corresponds to the rows or columns with indices in one vector in the list. If the value is a categorical variable (e.g. a factor or a character vector) that has the same length as the rows or columns in the heatmap, each box corresponds to the rows/columns in each level in the categorical variable. |
| panel_fun | A self-defined function that defines how to draw graphics in the box. The function must have a <code>index</code> argument which is the indices for the rows/columns that the box corresponds to. It can have second argument <code>nm</code> which is the "name" of the selected part in the heatmap. The corresponding value for <code>nm</code> comes from <code>align_to</code> if it is specified as a categorical variable or a list with names. |
| which | Whether it is a column annotation or a row annotation? |
| side | Side of the boxes. If it is a column annotation, valid values are "top" and "bottom"; If it is a row annotation, valid values are "left" and "right". |
| size | The size of boxes. It can be pure numeric that they are treated as relative fractions of the total height/width of the heatmap. The value of <code>size</code> can also be absolute units. |
| gap | Gaps between boxes. |
| link_gp | Graphic settings for the segments. |
| link_width | Width of the segments. |
| link_height | Similar as <code>link_width</code> , used for column annotation. |
| extend | By default, the region for the labels has the same width (if it is a column annotation) or same height (if it is a row annotation) as the heatmap. The size can be extended by this options. The value can be a proportion number or a <code>unit</code> object. The length can be either one or two. |
| width | Width of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Width is not allowed to be set for column annotation. |
| height | Height of the annotation. The value should be an absolute unit. Height is not allowed to be set for row annotation. |
| internal_line | Internally used. |

Details

`anno_zoom` creates several plotting regions (boxes) which can be corresponded to subsets of rows/columns in the heatmap.

Value

An annotation function which can be used in `HeatmapAnnotation`.

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html#zoom-annotation>

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
m = matrix(rnorm(100*10), nrow = 100)
subgroup = sample(letters[1:3], 100, replace = TRUE, prob = c(1, 5, 10))
rg = range(m)
panel_fun = function(index, nm) {
  pushViewport(viewport(xscale = rg, yscale = c(0, 2)))
  grid.rect()
  grid.xaxis(gp = gpar(fontsize = 8))
  grid.boxplot(m[index, ], pos = 1, direction = "horizontal")
  grid.text(paste("distribution of group", nm), mean(rg), y = 1.9,
    just = "top", default.units = "native", gp = gpar(fontsize = 10))
  popViewport()
}
anno = anno_zoom(align_to = subgroup, which = "row", panel_fun = panel_fun,
  size = unit(2, "cm"), gap = unit(1, "cm"), width = unit(4, "cm"))
Heatmap(m, right_annotation = rowAnnotation(foo = anno), row_split = subgroup)
```

attach_annotation-Heatmap-method

Attach heatmap annotations to the heatmap

Description

Attach heatmap annotations to the heatmap

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
attach_annotation(object, ha, side = c("top", "bottom", "left", "right"),
  gap = unit(1, "points"))
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>object</code> | A <code>Heatmap-class</code> object. |
| <code>ha</code> | A <code>HeatmapAnnotation-class</code> object. |
| <code>side</code> | Which side of the heatmap. Value should be in "top", "bottom", "left", "right". |
| <code>gap</code> | Space between the two heatmap annotations. |

Examples

```

m = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
ht = Heatmap(m)
ha = HeatmapAnnotation(foo = 1:10)
ht = attach_annotation(ht, ha)
ht
ha2 = HeatmapAnnotation(bar = letters[1:10])
ht = attach_annotation(ht, ha2)
ht

```

bar3D

Draw 3D bars

Description

Draw 3D bars

Usage

```
bar3D(x, y, w, h, l, theta = 60, default.units = "npc", fill = "white", col = "black")
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|--|
| x | x coordinate of the center point in the bottom face. |
| y | y coordinate of the center point in the bottom face. |
| w | Width of the bottom face. |
| h | Height of the bottom face. |
| l | Length of the bars (in the z-direction). |
| theta | The angle for the projection. |
| default.units | Units. |
| fill | Filled colors for the bars. |
| col | Border colors. |

Examples

```

grid.newpage()
bar3D(c(0.3, 0.7), 0.5, 0.2, 0.2, 0.2, fill = 2:3)

```

| | |
|------------|-----------------------|
| bin_genome | <i>Bin the genome</i> |
|------------|-----------------------|

Description

Bin the genome

Usage

```
bin_genome(species = "hg19", bins = 2000, bin_size = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|--|
| species | Abbreviation of the genome, pass to read.chromInfo . |
| bins | Number of bins. The final number of bins is approximately equal to it. |
| bin_size | Size of the bins. If bin_size is set, bins is ignored. |
| ... | All pass to read.chromInfo . E.g. you can set a subset of chromosomes there. |

Value

A [GRanges](#) object of the genomic bins.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|----------------|---|
| c.ColorMapping | <i>Concatenate A List of ColorMapping objects</i> |
|----------------|---|

Description

Concatenate A List of ColorMapping objects

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'ColorMapping'
c(..., name = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------|---|
| ... | A list of ColorMapping-class objects. |
| name | Name of the new merged color mapping. |

Details

Only discrete color mappings can be concatenated.

Examples

```
cm1 = ColorMapping(colors = c("A" = "red", "B" = "black"))
cm2 = ColorMapping(colors = c("B" = "blue", "C" = "green"))
c(cm1, cm2)
```

c.HeatmapAnnotation *Concatenate Heatmap Annotations*

Description

Concatenate Heatmap Annotations

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'
c(..., gap = unit(1, "points"))
```

Arguments

... [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) objects.
gap Gap between the groups of annotations.

Details

The heatmap annotations should have same number of observations.

Examples

```
ha1 = HeatmapAnnotation(foo = 1:10)
ha2 = HeatmapAnnotation(bar = anno_points(10:1))
ha = c(ha1, ha2)
ha
ha3 = HeatmapAnnotation(sth = cbind(1:10, 10:1))
ha = c(ha1, ha2, ha3, gap = unit(c(1, 4), "mm"))
ha
```

cluster_between_groups *Cluster only between Groups*

Description

Cluster only between Groups

Usage

```
cluster_between_groups(mat, factor)
```

Arguments

mat A matrix where clustering is applied on columns.
factor A categorical vector.

Details

The clustering is only applied between groups and inside a group, the order is unchanged.

Value

A [dendrogram](#) object.

Examples

```
m = matrix(rnorm(120), nc = 12)
colnames(m) = letters[1:12]
fa = rep(c("a", "b", "c"), times = c(2, 4, 6))
dend = cluster_between_groups(m, fa)
grid.dendrogram(dend, test = TRUE)
```

cluster_within_group *Cluster within and between Groups*

Description

Cluster within and between Groups

Usage

```
cluster_within_group(mat, factor)
```

Arguments

mat A matrix where clustering is applied on columns.
factor A categorical vector.

Details

The clustering is firstly applied in each group, then clustering is applied to group means. The within-group dendrograms and between-group dendrogram are finally connected by [merge_dendrogram](#).

In the final dendrogram, the within group dendrograms are enforced to be flat lines to emphasize that the within group dendrograms have no sense to compare to between-group dendrogram.

Value

A [dendrogram](#) object. The order of columns can be retrieved by [order.dendrogram](#).

Examples

```
m = matrix(rnorm(120), nc = 12)
colnames(m) = letters[1:12]
fa = rep(c("a", "b", "c"), times = c(2, 4, 6))
dend = cluster_within_group(m, fa)
grid.dendrogram(dend, test = TRUE)
```

ColorMapping

*Constructor Method for ColorMapping Class***Description**

Constructor Method for ColorMapping Class

Usage

```
ColorMapping(name, colors = NULL, levels = NULL,
             col_fun = NULL, breaks = NULL, na_col = "#FFFFFF", full_col = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|--|
| name | Name for this color mapping. The name is automatically generated if it is not specified. |
| colors | Discrete colors. |
| levels | Levels that correspond to colors. If colors is name indexed, levels can be ignored. |
| col_fun | Color mapping function that maps continuous values to colors. |
| breaks | Breaks for the continuous color mapping. If col_fun is generated by colorRamp2 , breaks is automatically inferred from the color mapping function. |
| na_col | Colors for NA values. |
| full_col | A super set of colors, used internally. |

Details

colors and levels are used for discrete color mapping, col_fun and breaks are used for continuous color mapping.

Value

A [ColorMapping-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
cm = ColorMapping(colors = c("A" = "red", "B" = "black"))
cm
require(circlize)
col_fun = colorRamp2(c(0, 1), c("white", "red"))
cm = ColorMapping(col_fun = col_fun)
```

ColorMapping-class *Class for Color Mapping*

Description

Class for Color Mapping

Details

The `ColorMapping-class` handles color mapping for discrete values and continuous values. Discrete values are mapped by setting a vector of colors and continuous values are mapped by setting a color mapping function.

Methods

The `ColorMapping-class` provides following methods:

- `ColorMapping`: constructor methods.
- `map_to_colors, ColorMapping-method`: mapping values to colors.
- `color_mapping_legend, ColorMapping-method`: draw legend or get legend as an object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

color_mapping_legend-ColorMapping-method
Draw Legend Based on Color Mapping

Description

Draw Legend Based on Color Mapping

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'ColorMapping'
color_mapping_legend(object,
  plot = TRUE, ...,

  color_bar = object@type,

  title = object@name,
  title_gp = gpar(fontsize = 10, fontface = "bold"),
  title_position = "topleft",
```

```

grid_height = unit(4, "mm"),
grid_width = unit(4, "mm"),
tick_length = unit(0.8, "mm"),
border = NULL,
at = object@levels,
labels = at,
labels_gp = gpar(fontsize = 10),
labels_rot = 0,
nrow = NULL,
ncol = 1,
by_row = FALSE,
legend_gp = gpar(),
legend_height = NULL,
legend_width = NULL,
legend_direction = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
break_dist = NULL,

graphics = NULL,
param = NULL)

```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|---|
| object | A ColorMapping-class object. |
| plot | Whether to plot or just return the legend object? |
| ... | Pass to draw,Legends-method . |
| color_bar | "continuous" or "discrete". It controls whether to show the discrete legend for the continuous color mapping. |
| title | Title of the legend, by default it is the name of the legend. |
| title_gp | Graphical parameters for legend title. |
| title_position | Position of the title. See Legend for all possible values. |
| grid_height | Height of each legend grid. Pass to Legend . |
| grid_width | Width of each legend grid. Pass to Legend . |
| tick_length | Length of the ticks on the continuous legends. Value should be a unit object. |
| border | Color for legend grid borders. Pass to Legend . |
| at | Break values of the legend. By default it is the levels in the ColorMapping-class object. |
| labels | Labels corresponding to break values. |
| labels_gp | Graphical parameters for legend labels. |
| labels_rot | Rotation of labels. |
| nrow | Pass to Legend . It controls the layout of legend grids if they are arranged in multiple rows or columns. |
| ncol | Pass to Legend . It controls the layout of legend grids if they are arranged in multiple rows or columns. |
| by_row | Pass to Legend . It controls the order of legend grids if they are arranged in multiple rows or columns. |
| legend_gp | Graphic parameters for legend. |

| | |
|------------------|--|
| legend_height | Height of the legend body. It only works when color_bar is continuous and direction is vertical. Pass to Legend . |
| legend_width | Width of the legend body. It only works when color_bar is continuous and direction is horizontal. Pass to Legend . |
| legend_direction | When color_bar is continuous, whether the legend is vertical or horizontal? Pass to Legend . |
| break_dist | A zooming factor to control relative distance of two neighbouring break values. The length of it should be length(at) - 1 or a scalar. |
| graphics | Internally used. |
| param | All the legend-related parameters can be specified as a single list. |

Details

The legend is constructed by [Legend](#).

Value

A [Legends-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| columnAnnotation | <i>Construct Column Annotations</i> |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|

Description

Construct Column Annotations

Usage

```
columnAnnotation(...)
```

Arguments

... Pass to [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

Details

The function is identical to

```
HeatmapAnnotation(..., which = "column")
```

Value

A [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

column_dend-dispatch *Method dispatch page for column_dend*

Description

Method dispatch page for column_dend.

Dispatch

column_dend can be dispatched on following classes:

- [column_dend,Heatmap-method](#), [Heatmap-class](#) class method
- [column_dend,HeatmapList-method](#), [HeatmapList-class](#) class method

Examples

```
# no example
NULL
```

column_dend-Heatmap-method
Get Column Dendrograms from a Heatmap

Description

Get Column Dendrograms from a Heatmap

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
column_dend(object, on_slice = FALSE)
```

Arguments

object A [Heatmap-class](#) object.
on_slice If the value is TRUE, it returns the dendrogram on the slice level.

Value

The format of the returned object depends on whether rows/columns of the heatmaps are split.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
ht = Heatmap(mat)
ht = draw(ht)
column_dend(ht)
ht = Heatmap(mat, column_km = 2)
ht = draw(ht)
column_dend(ht)
```

column_dend-HeatmapList-method

Get Column Dendrograms from a hHeatmap List

Description

Get Column Dendrograms from a hHeatmap List

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'
column_dend(object, name = NULL, on_slice = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|---|
| object | A HeatmapList-class object. |
| name | Name of a specific heatmap. |
| on_slice | If the value is TRUE, it returns the dendrogram on the slice level. |

Value

The format of the returned object depends on whether rows/columns of the heatmaps are split.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat) + Heatmap(mat)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
column_dend(ht_list)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat, column_km = 2) + Heatmap(mat, column_km = 2)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
column_dend(ht_list)
column_dend(ht_list, on_slice = TRUE)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat) %v% Heatmap(mat)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
column_dend(ht_list)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat, column_km = 2) %v% Heatmap(mat)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
column_dend(ht_list)
```

column_order-dispatch *Method dispatch page for column_order*

Description

Method dispatch page for column_order.

Dispatch

column_order can be dispatched on following classes:

- [column_order, Heatmap-method, Heatmap-class](#) class method
- [column_order, HeatmapList-method, HeatmapList-class](#) class method

Examples

```
# no example
NULL
```

column_order-Heatmap-method
Get Column Order from a Aeatmap List

Description

Get Column Order from a Aeatmap List

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
column_order(object)
```

Arguments

object A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Value

The format of the returned object depends on whether rows/columns of the heatmaps are split.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
ht = Heatmap(mat)
ht = draw(ht)
column_order(ht)
ht = Heatmap(mat, column_km = 2)
ht = draw(ht)
column_order(ht)
```

column_order-HeatmapList-method

Get Column Order from a Heatmap List

Description

Get Column Order from a Heatmap List

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'
column_order(object, name = NULL)
```

Arguments

object A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.
name Name of a specific heatmap.

Value

The format of the returned object depends on whether rows/columns of the heatmaps are split.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```

mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat) + Heatmap(mat)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
column_order(ht_list)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat, column_km = 2) + Heatmap(mat, column_km = 2)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
column_order(ht_list)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat) %v% Heatmap(mat)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
column_order(ht_list)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat, column_km = 2) %v% Heatmap(mat)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
column_order(ht_list)

```

| | |
|-------------|--|
| comb_degree | <i>Degrees of the Combination sets</i> |
|-------------|--|

Description

Degrees of the Combination sets

Usage

```
comb_degree(m)
```

Arguments

`m` A combination matrix returned by [make_comb_mat](#).

Details

The degree for a combination set is the number of sets that are selected.

Value

A vector of degrees of the combination sets.

Examples

```

set.seed(123)
lt = list(a = sample(letters, 10),
         b = sample(letters, 15),
         c = sample(letters, 20))
m = make_comb_mat(lt)
comb_degree(m)

```

| | |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|
| comb_name | <i>Names of the Combination sets</i> |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|

Description

Names of the Combination sets

Usage

```
comb_name(m, readable = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|--|
| m | A combination matrix returned by make_comb_mat . |
| readable | Whether the combination represents as e.g. "A&B&C". |

Details

The name of the combination sets are formatted as a string of binary bits. E.g. for three sets of "a", "b", "c", the combination set with name "101" corresponds to select set a, not select set b and select set c. The definition of "select" depends on the value of mode from [make_comb_mat](#).

Value

A vector of names of the combination sets.

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
lt = list(a = sample(letters, 10),
         b = sample(letters, 15),
         c = sample(letters, 20))
m = make_comb_mat(lt)
comb_name(m)
comb_name(m, readable = TRUE)
```

| | |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|
| comb_size | <i>Sizes of the Combination sets</i> |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|

Description

Sizes of the Combination sets

Usage

```
comb_size(m, degree = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--|
| m | A combination matrix returned by make_comb_mat . |
| degree | degree of the intersection. The value can be a vector. |

Value

A vector of sizes of the combination sets.

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
lt = list(a = sample(letters, 10),
         b = sample(letters, 15),
         c = sample(letters, 20))
m = make_comb_mat(lt)
comb_size(m)
```

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| compare_heatmap | <i>Compare heatmaps between stats::heatmap() and ComplexHeatmap::heatmap()</i> |
|-----------------|--|

Description

Compare heatmaps between stats::heatmap() and ComplexHeatmap::heatmap()

Usage

```
compare_heatmap(...)
```

Arguments

... The same set of arguments passed to stats::heatmap and ComplexHeatmap::heatmap.

Details

The function plots two heatmaps, one by stats::heatmap and one by ComplexHeatmap::heatmap. Users can see the difference between the two implementations.

Examples

```
mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
compare_heatmap(mat)
```

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| compare_heatmap.2 | <i>Compare heatmaps between gplots::heatmap.2() and ComplexHeatmap::heatmap()</i> |
|-------------------|---|

Description

Compare heatmaps between gplots::heatmap.2() and ComplexHeatmap::heatmap()

Usage

```
compare_heatmap.2(...)
```

Arguments

... The same set of arguments passed to `gplots::heatmap.2` and `ComplexHeatmap::heatmap.2`.

Details

The function plots two heatmaps, one by `gplots::heatmap.2` and one by `ComplexHeatmap::heatmap.2`. Users can see the difference between the two implementations.

Examples

```
mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
compare_heatmap.2(mat)
```

| | |
|------------------|---|
| compare_pheatmap | <i>Compare heatmaps between pheatmap::pheatmap() and ComplexHeatmap::pheatmap()</i> |
|------------------|---|

Description

Compare heatmaps between `pheatmap::pheatmap()` and `ComplexHeatmap::pheatmap()`

Usage

```
compare_pheatmap(...)
```

Arguments

... The same set of arguments passed to `pheatmap::pheatmap` and `ComplexHeatmap::pheatmap`.

Details

The function plots two heatmaps, one by `pheatmap::pheatmap` and one by `ComplexHeatmap::pheatmap`. Users can see the difference between the two implementations.

Examples

```
mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
compare_pheatmap(mat)
```

| | |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| complement_size | <i>Complement Set Size</i> |
|-----------------|----------------------------|

Description

Complement Set Size

Usage

```
complement_size(m)
```

Arguments

m A combination matrix returned by [make_comb_mat](#).

Value

If there is no complement set, it returns zero.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| component_height-dispatch | <i>Method dispatch page for component_height</i> |
|---------------------------|--|

Description

Method dispatch page for component_height.

Dispatch

component_height can be dispatched on following classes:

- [component_height](#), [HeatmapList-method](#), [HeatmapList-class](#) class method
- [component_height](#), [Heatmap-method](#), [Heatmap-class](#) class method

Examples

```
# no example  
NULL
```

component_height-Heatmap-method

Heights of Heatmap Components

Description

Heights of Heatmap Components

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
component_height(object, k = HEATMAP_LAYOUT_COLUMN_COMPONENT)
```

Arguments

object A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

k Which components in the heatmap. The value should numeric indices or the names of the corresponding column component. See ****Details****.

Details

All column components are: column_title_top, column_dend_top, column_names_top, column_anno_top, heatmap_body, column_anno_bottom, column_names_bottom, column_dend_bottom, column_title_bottom.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

A [unit](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

component_height-HeatmapList-method

Height of Heatmap List Components

Description

Height of Heatmap List Components

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'
component_height(object, k = HEATMAP_LIST_LAYOUT_COLUMN_COMPONENT)
```


Arguments

| | |
|--------|---|
| object | A HeatmapList-class object. |
| k | Which component in the heatmap list. Values are in <code>ComplexHeatmap:::HEATMAP_LIST_LAYOUT_CO</code> |

Value

A [unit](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

component_width-dispatch

Method dispatch page for component_width

Description

Method dispatch page for component_width.

Dispatch

component_width can be dispatched on following classes:

- [component_width,HeatmapList-method, HeatmapList-class](#) class method
- [component_width,Heatmap-method, Heatmap-class](#) class method

Examples

```
# no example
NULL
```

component_width-Heatmap-method

Widths of Heatmap Components

Description

Widths of Heatmap Components

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
component_width(object, k = HEATMAP_LAYOUT_ROW_COMPONENT)
```

Arguments

object A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

k Which components in the heatmap. The value should numeric indices or the names of the corresponding row component. See ****Details****.

Details

All row components are: row_title_left, row_dend_left, row_names_left, row_anno_left, heatmap_body, row_anno_right, row_names_right, row_dend_right, row_title_right.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

A [unit](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

component_width-HeatmapList-method

Width of Heatmap List Components

Description

Width of Heatmap List Components

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'
component_width(object, k = HEATMAP_LIST_LAYOUT_ROW_COMPONENT)
```

Arguments

object A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.
 k Which component in the heatmap list. Values are in `ComplexHeatmap:::HEATMAP_LIST_LAYOUT_ROW`

Details

This function is only for internal use.

Value

A `unit` object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

copy_all-AnnotationFunction-method

Copy the AnnotationFunction Object

Description

Copy the AnnotationFunction Object

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'AnnotationFunction'
copy_all(object)
```

Arguments

object The [AnnotationFunction-class](#) object.

Details

In [AnnotationFunction-class](#), there is an environment which stores some external variables for the annotation function (specified by the `var_import` argument when constructing the [AnnotationFunction-class](#) object. This [copy_all, AnnotationFunction-method](#) hard copies all the variables into a new isolated environment.

The environment is at `object@var_env`.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

copy_all-dispatch *Method dispatch page for copy_all*

Description

Method dispatch page for copy_all.

Dispatch

copy_all can be dispatched on following classes:

- [copy_all, AnnotationFunction-method, AnnotationFunction-class](#) class method
- [copy_all, SingleAnnotation-method, SingleAnnotation-class](#) class method

Examples

```
# no example
NULL
```

copy_all-SingleAnnotation-method
Copy the SingleAnnotation object

Description

Copy the SingleAnnotation object

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'SingleAnnotation'
copy_all(object)
```

Arguments

object The [SingleAnnotation-class](#) object.

Details

Since the SingleAnnotation object always contains an [AnnotationFunction-class](#) object, it calls [copy_all, AnnotationFunction-method](#) to hard copy the variable environment.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

decorate_annotation *Decorate Heatmap Annotation*

Description

Decorate Heatmap Annotation

Usage

```
decorate_annotation(annotation, code, slice = 1, envir = new.env(parent = parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| annotation | Name of the annotation. |
| code | Code that adds graphics in the selected heatmap annotation. |
| slice | Index of the row slices or the column slice in the heatmap. |
| envir | Where to look for variables inside code. |

Details

There is a viewport for every column annotation and row annotation. This function constructs the name of the viewport, goes to the viewport by `seekViewport`, runs code to that viewport, and finally goes back to the original viewport.

Value

The function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-decoration.html>

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
ha1 = HeatmapAnnotation(df = data.frame(type = rep(letters[1:2], 5)))
ha2 = rowAnnotation(point = anno_points(runif(10), which = "row"))
Heatmap(matrix(rnorm(100), 10), name = "mat", km = 2,
  top_annotation = ha1) + ha2
decorate_annotation("type", {
  grid.circle(x = unit(c(0.2, 0.4, 0.6, 0.8), "npc"),
    gp = gpar(fill = "#FF000080"))
})
decorate_annotation("point", {
  grid.rect(gp = gpar(fill = "#FF000080"))
}, slice = 2)
```

decorate_column_dend *Decorate Heatmap Column Dendrograms*

Description

Decorate Heatmap Column Dendrograms

Usage

```
decorate_column_dend(..., envir = new.env(parent = parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

... Pass to [decorate_dend](#).
envir Where to look for variables inside code.

Details

This is a wrapper function which pre-defined which argument in [decorate_dend](#).

Value

The function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

decorate_column_names *Decorate Heatmap Column Names*

Description

Decorate Heatmap Column Names

Usage

```
decorate_column_names(..., envir = new.env(parent = parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

... Pass to [decorate_dimnames](#).
envir Where to look for variables inside code.

Details

This is a helper function which pre-defined which argument in [decorate_dimnames](#).

Value

The function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

decorate_column_title *Decorate Heatmap Column Titles*

Description

Decorate Heatmap Column Titles

Usage

```
decorate_column_title(..., envir = new.env(parent = parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| ... | Pass to decorate_title . |
| envir | Where to look for variables inside code. |

Details

This is a helper function which pre-defined which argument in [decorate_title](#).

Value

The function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| decorate_dend | <i>Decorate Heatmap Dendrograms</i> |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|

Description

Decorate Heatmap Dendrograms

Usage

```
decorate_dend(heatmap, code, slice = 1, which = c("column", "row"),
  envir = new.env(parent = parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------|---|
| heatmap | Name of the heatmap. |
| code | Code that adds graphics in the selected heatmap dendrogram. |
| slice | Index of the row slice or column slice in the heatmap. |
| which | Is the dendrogram on rows or on columns? |
| envir | Where to look for variables inside code. |

Details

If you know the number of leaves in the dendrogram, it is simple to calculate the position of every leave in the dendrogram. E.g., for the column dendrogram, the i^{th} leave is located at:

```
# assume nc is the number of columns in the column slice
unit((i-0.5)/nc, "npc")
```

Value

This function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-decoration.html>

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
Heatmap(matrix(rnorm(100), 10), name = "mat", km = 2)
decorate_dend("mat", {
  grid.rect(gp = gpar(fill = "#FF00080"))
}, which = "row", slice = 2)
```

decorate_dimnames *Decorate Heatmap Dimension Names*

Description

Decorate Heatmap Dimension Names

Usage

```
decorate_dimnames(heatmap, code, slice = 1, which = c("column", "row"),
  envir = new.env(parent = parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------|--|
| heatmap | Name of the heatmap. |
| code | Code that adds graphics in the selected viewport. |
| slice | Index of the row slice or column slice in the heatmap. |
| which | on rows or on columns? |
| envir | where to look for variables inside code. |

Details

If you know the dimensions of the matrix, it is simple to calculate the position of every row name or column name in the heatmap. E.g., for the column column, the i^{th} name is located at:

```
# assume nc is the number of columns in the column slice
unit((i-0.5)/nc, "npc")
```

Value

The function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
rownames(mat) = letters[1:10]
colnames(mat) = LETTERS[1:10]
Heatmap(mat, name = "mat", km = 2)

decorate_dimnames("mat", {
  grid.rect(gp = gpar(fill = "#FF000080"))
}, which = "row", slice = 2)
```

decorate_heatmap_body *Decorate Heatmap Bodies*

Description

Decorate Heatmap Bodies

Usage

```
decorate_heatmap_body(heatmap, code,  
  slice = 1, row_slice = slice, column_slice = 1,  
  envir = new.env(parent = parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------|--|
| heatmap | Name of the heatmap which is set as name argument in Heatmap function. |
| code | Code that adds graphics in the selected heatmap body. |
| slice | Index of the row slice in the heatmap. |
| row_slice | Index of the row slice in the heatmap. |
| column_slice | Index of the column slice in the heatmap. |
| envir | Where to look for variables inside code. |

Details

There is a viewport for each slice in each heatmap. This function constructs the name of the viewport, goes to the viewport by [seekViewport](#), runs the code to that viewport and finally goes back to the original viewport.

Value

This function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-decoration.html>

Examples

```
set.seed(123)  
Heatmap(matrix(rnorm(100), 10), name = "mat")  
decorate_heatmap_body("mat", {  
  grid.circle(gp = gpar(fill = "#FF00080"))  
})
```

decorate_row_dend *Decorate Heatmap Row Dendrograms*

Description

Decorate Heatmap Row Dendrograms

Usage

```
decorate_row_dend(..., envir = new.env(parent = parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

... Pass to [decorate_dend](#).
envir Where to look for variables inside code?

Details

This is a helper function which pre-defined which argument in [decorate_dend](#).

Value

The function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

decorate_row_names *Decorate Heatmap Row Names*

Description

Decorate Heatmap Row Names

Usage

```
decorate_row_names(..., envir = new.env(parent = parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

... Pass to [decorate_dimnames](#).
envir Where to look for variables inside code.

Details

This is a helper function which pre-defined which argument in [decorate_dimnames](#).

Value

The function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

decorate_row_title *Decorate Heatmap Row Titles*

Description

Decorate Heatmap Row Titles

Usage

```
decorate_row_title(..., envir = new.env(parent = parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| ... | Pass to decorate_title . |
| envir | Where to look for variables inside code. |

Details

This is a helper function which pre-defined which argument in [decorate_title](#).

Value

The function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| decorate_title | <i>Decorate Heatmap Titles</i> |
|----------------|--------------------------------|

Description

Decorate Heatmap Titles

Usage

```
decorate_title(heatmap, code, slice = 1, which = c("column", "row"),
  envir = new.env(parent = parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------|--|
| heatmap | Name of the heatmap. |
| code | Code that adds graphics in the selected viewport. |
| slice | Index of the row slice or column slice in the heatmap. |
| which | Is it a row title or a column title? |
| envir | Where to look for variables inside code. |

Details

There is a viewport for row titles and column title in the heatmap. This function constructs the name of the viewport, goes to the viewport by `seekViewport`, runs code to that viewport and finally goes back to the original viewport.

Value

The function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-decoration.html>

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
Heatmap(matrix(rnorm(100), 10), name = "mat", km = 2)
decorate_title("mat", {
  grid.rect(gp = gpar(fill = "#FF000080"))
}, which = "row", slice = 2)
```

default_axis_param *The Default Parameters for Annotation Axis*

Description

The Default Parameters for Annotation Axis

Usage

```
default_axis_param(which)
```

Arguments

which Whether it is for column annotation or row annotation?

Details

There are following parameters for the annotation axis:

at The breaks of axis. By default it is automatically inferred.

labels The corresponding axis labels.

labels_rot The rotation of the axis labels.

gp Graphc parameters of axis labels. The value should be a [unit](#) object.

side If it is for column annotation, the value should only be one of `left` and `right`. If it is for row annotation, the value should only be one of `top` and `bottom`.

facing Whether the axis faces to the outside of the annotation region or inside. Sometimes when appending more than one heatmaps, the axes of column annotations of one heatmap might overlap to the neighbouring heatmap, setting `facing` to `inside` may invoid it.

direction The direction of the axis. Value should be "normal" or "reverse".

All the parameters are passed to [annotation_axis_grob](#) to construct an axis grob.

Examples

```
default_axis_param("column")
default_axis_param("row")
```

default_get_type *Default get_type for oncoPrint()*

Description

Default get_type for oncoPrint()

Usage

```
default_get_type(x)
```

Arguments

x A strings which encode multiple alterations.

Details

It recognizes following separators: ; , |.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|----------------|----------------------------|
| dendrogramGrob | <i>Grob for Dendrogram</i> |
|----------------|----------------------------|

Description

Grob for Dendrogram

Usage

```
dendrogramGrob(dend, facing = c("bottom", "top", "left", "right"),
  order = c("normal", "reverse"), gp = gpar())
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--|
| dend | A dendrogram object. |
| facing | Facing of the dendrogram. |
| order | If it is set to reverse, the first leaf is put on the right if the dendrogram is horizontal and it is put on the top if the dendrogram is vertical. |
| gp | Graphic parameters for the dendrogram segments. If any of col, lwd or lty is set in the edgePar attribute of a node, the corresponding value defined in gp will be overwritten for this node, so gp is like global graphic parameters for dendrogram segments. |

Details

If dend has not been processed by [adjust_dend_by_x](#), internally [adjust_dend_by_x](#) is called to add x attributes to each node/leaf.

Value

A [grob](#) object which is constructed by [segmentsGrob](#).

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

dend_heights *Height of the Dendrograms*

Description

Height of the Dendrograms

Usage

```
dend_heights(x)
```

Arguments

x a [dendrogram](#) object or a list of [dendrogram](#) objects.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

dend_xy *Coordinates of the Dendrogram*

Description

Coordinates of the Dendrogram

Usage

```
dend_xy(dend)
```

Arguments

dend a [dendrogram](#) object.

Details

dend will be processed by [adjust_dend_by_x](#) if it is processed yet.

Value

A list of leave positions (x) and dendrogram height (y).

Examples

```

m = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
dend1 = as.dendrogram(hclust(dist(m)))
dend_xy(dend1)

dend1 = adjust_dend_by_x(dend1, sort(runif(10)))
dend_xy(dend1)

dend1 = adjust_dend_by_x(dend1, unit(1:10, "cm"))
dend_xy(dend1)

```

densityHeatmap

Visualize Density Distribution by Heatmap

Description

Visualize Density Distribution by Heatmap

Usage

```

densityHeatmap(data,
  density_param = list(na.rm = TRUE),

  col = rev(brewer.pal(11, "Spectral")),
  color_space = "LAB",
  ylab = deparse(substitute(data)),
  column_title = paste0("Density heatmap of ", deparse(substitute(data))),
  title = column_title,
  ylim = NULL,
  range = ylim,

  title_gp = gpar(fontsize = 14),
  ylab_gp = gpar(fontsize = 12),
  tick_label_gp = gpar(fontsize = 10),
  quantile_gp = gpar(fontsize = 10),
  show_quantiles = TRUE,

  column_order = NULL,
  column_names_side = "bottom",
  show_column_names = TRUE,
  column_names_max_height = unit(6, "cm"),
  column_names_gp = gpar(fontsize = 12),
  column_names_rot = 90,

  cluster_columns = FALSE,
  clustering_distance_columns = "ks",
  clustering_method_columns = "complete",
  mc.cores = 1, cores = mc.cores,

  ...)

```

Arguments

| | |
|--|---|
| <code>data</code> | A matrix or a list. If it is a matrix, density is calculated by columns. |
| <code>density_param</code> | Parameters send to <code>density</code> , <code>na.rm</code> is enforced to be TRUE. |
| <code>col</code> | A vector of colors that density values are mapped to. |
| <code>color_space</code> | The color space in which colors are interpolated. Pass to <code>colorRamp2</code> . |
| <code>ylab</code> | Label on y-axis. |
| <code>column_title</code> | Title of the heatmap. |
| <code>title</code> | Same as <code>column_title</code> . |
| <code>ylim</code> | Ranges on the y-axis. |
| <code>range</code> | Same as <code>ylim</code> . |
| <code>title_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for title. |
| <code>ylab_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for y-labels. |
| <code>tick_label_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for y-ticks. |
| <code>quantile_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for the quantiles. |
| <code>show_quantiles</code> | Whether show quantile lines. |
| <code>column_order</code> | Order of columns. |
| <code>column_names_side</code> | Pass to <code>Heatmap</code> . |
| <code>show_column_names</code> | Pass to <code>Heatmap</code> . |
| <code>column_names_max_height</code> | Pass to <code>Heatmap</code> . |
| <code>column_names_gp</code> | Pass to <code>Heatmap</code> . |
| <code>column_names_rot</code> | Pass to <code>Heatmap</code> . |
| <code>cluster_columns</code> | Whether cluster columns? |
| <code>clustering_distance_columns</code> | There is a specific distance method <code>ks</code> which is the Kolmogorov-Smirnov statistic between two distributions. For other methods, the distance is calculated on the density matrix. |
| <code>clustering_method_columns</code> | Pass to <code>Heatmap</code> . |
| <code>mc.cores</code> | Multiple cores for calculating <code>ks</code> distance. This argument will be removed in future versions. |
| <code>cores</code> | Multiple cores for calculating <code>ks</code> distance. |
| <code>...</code> | Pass to <code>Heatmap</code> . |

Details

To visualize data distribution in a matrix or in a list, we normally use boxplot or violinplot. We can also use colors to map the density values and visualize distribution of values through a heatmap. It is useful if you have huge number of columns in data to visualize.

The density matrix is generated with 500 rows ranging between the maximum and minimal values in all densities.

Value

A `Heatmap-class` object. It can only add other heatmaps/annotations vertically.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/other-high-level-plots.html#density-heatmap>

Examples

```
matrix = matrix(rnorm(100), 10); colnames(matrix) = letters[1:10]
densityHeatmap(matrix)

lt = list(rnorm(10), rnorm(10))
densityHeatmap(lt)

ha = HeatmapAnnotation(points = anno_points(runif(10)),
  anno = rep(c("A", "B"), each = 5), col = list(anno = c("A" = "red", "B" = "blue")))
densityHeatmap(matrix, top_annotation = ha)
densityHeatmap(matrix, top_annotation = ha) %v% Heatmap(matrix, height = unit(6, "cm"))
```

dim.Heatmap

Dimension of the Heatmap

Description

Dimension of the Heatmap

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'Heatmap'
dim(x)
```

Arguments

x A `Heatmap-class` object.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

dist2 *Calculate Pairwise Distance from a Matrix*

Description

Calculate Pairwise Distance from a Matrix

Usage

```
dist2(x, pairwise_fun = function(x, y) sqrt(sum((x - y)^2)), ...)
```

Arguments

x A matrix or a list. If it is a matrix, the distance is calculated by rows.
pairwise_fun A function which calculates distance between two vectors.
... Pass to [as.dist](#).

Details

You can construct any type of distance measurements by defining a pair-wise distance function. The function is implemented by two nested for loops, so the efficiency may not be so good.

Value

A [dist](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
lt = lapply(1:10, function(i) {
  sample(letters, sample(6:10, 1))
})
dist2(lt, function(x, y) {
  length(intersect(x, y))/length(union(x, y))
})
```

draw-AnnotationFunction-method
Draw the AnnotationFunction Object

Description

Draw the AnnotationFunction Object

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'AnnotationFunction'
draw(object, index, k = 1, n = 1, test = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|---|
| object | The AnnotationFunction-class object. |
| index | Index of observations. |
| k | Current slice index. |
| n | Total number of slices. |
| test | Is it in test mode? The value can be logical or a text which is plotted as the title of plot. |
| ... | Pass to viewport . |

Details

Normally it is called internally by the [SingleAnnotation-class](#).

When test is set to TRUE, the annotation graphic is directly drawn, which is generally for testing purpose.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| draw-dispatch | <i>Method dispatch page for draw</i> |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|

Description

Method dispatch page for draw.

Dispatch

draw can be dispatched on following classes:

- [draw, HeatmapAnnotation-method, HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) class method
- [draw, Legends-method, Legends-class](#) class method
- [draw, SingleAnnotation-method, SingleAnnotation-class](#) class method
- [draw, AnnotationFunction-method, AnnotationFunction-class](#) class method
- [draw, Heatmap-method, Heatmap-class](#) class method
- [draw, HeatmapList-method, HeatmapList-class](#) class method

Examples

```
# no example
NULL
```

draw-Heatmap-method *Draw a Single Heatmap*

Description

Draw a Single Heatmap

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'  
draw(object, internal = FALSE, test = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|--|
| object | A Heatmap-class object. |
| internal | If TRUE, it is only used inside the calling of draw,HeatmapList-method . It only draws the heatmap without legends where the legend will be drawn by draw,HeatmapList-method . |
| test | Only for testing. If it is TRUE, the heatmap body is directly drawn. |
| ... | Pass to draw,HeatmapList-method . |

Details

The function creates a [HeatmapList-class](#) object which only contains a single heatmap and call [draw,HeatmapList-method](#) to make the final heatmap.

There are some arguments which control the some settings of the heatmap such as legends. Please go to [draw,HeatmapList-method](#) for these arguments.

Value

A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

`draw-HeatmapAnnotation-method`*Draw the Heatmap Annotations*

Description

Draw the Heatmap Annotations

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapAnnotation'  
draw(object, index, k = 1, n = 1, ...,  
      test = FALSE, anno_mark_param = list())
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>object</code> | A HeatmapAnnotation-class object. |
| <code>index</code> | A vector of indices. |
| <code>k</code> | The current slice index for the annotation if it is split. |
| <code>n</code> | Total number of slices. |
| <code>...</code> | Pass to viewport which contains all the annotations. |
| <code>test</code> | Is it in test mode? The value can be logical or a text which is plotted as the title of plot. |
| <code>anno_mark_param</code> | It contains specific parameters for drawing anno_mark and pass to the draw, SingleAnnotation-met |

Value

No value is returned.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

 draw-HeatmapList-method

Draw a list of heatmaps

Description

Draw a list of heatmaps

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'
draw(object,
      newpage = TRUE,
      background = "white",

      row_title = character(0),
      row_title_side = c("left", "right"),
      row_title_gp = gpar(fontsize = 13),
      column_title = character(0),
      column_title_side = c("top", "bottom"),
      column_title_gp = gpar(fontsize = 13),

      heatmap_legend_side = c("right", "left", "bottom", "top"),
      merge_legends = ht_opt$merge_legends,
      show_heatmap_legend = TRUE,
      heatmap_legend_list = list(),
      annotation_legend_side = c("right", "left", "bottom", "top"),
      show_annotation_legend = TRUE,
      annotation_legend_list = list(),
      align_heatmap_legend = NULL,
      align_annotation_legend = NULL,
      legend_grouping = c("adjusted", "original"),

      gap = unit(2, "mm"),
      ht_gap = gap,

      main_heatmap = which(sapply(object@ht_list, inherits, "Heatmap"))[1],
      padding = GLOBAL_PADDING,
      adjust_annotation_extension = NULL,

      auto_adjust = TRUE,
      row_dend_side = c("original", "left", "right"),
      row_sub_title_side = c("original", "left", "right"),
      column_dend_side = c("original", "top", "bottom"),
      column_sub_title_side = c("original", "top", "bottom"),

      row_gap = NULL,
      cluster_rows = NULL,
      cluster_row_slices = NULL,
      clustering_distance_rows = NULL,
      clustering_method_rows = NULL,
```



```
row_dend_width = NULL,
show_row_dend = NULL,
row_dend_reorder = NULL,
row_dend_gp = NULL,
row_order = NULL,
km = NULL,
split = NULL,
row_km = km,
row_km_repeats = NULL,
row_split = split,
height = NULL,
heatmap_height = NULL,

column_gap = NULL,
cluster_columns = NULL,
cluster_column_slices = NULL,
clustering_distance_columns = NULL,
clustering_method_columns = NULL,
column_dend_width = NULL,
show_column_dend = NULL,
column_dend_reorder = NULL,
column_dend_gp = NULL,
column_order = NULL,
column_km = NULL,
column_km_repeats = NULL,
column_split = NULL,
width = NULL,
heatmap_width = NULL,

use_raster = NULL,
raster_device = NULL,
raster_quality = NULL,
raster_device_param = NULL,
raster_resize = NULL,

post_fun = NULL,
save_last = ht_opt$save_last,

### global setting
heatmap_row_names_gp = NULL,
heatmap_column_names_gp = NULL,
heatmap_row_title_gp = NULL,
heatmap_column_title_gp = NULL,
legend_title_gp = NULL,
legend_title_position = NULL,
legend_labels_gp = NULL,
legend_grid_height = NULL,
legend_grid_width = NULL,
legend_border = NULL,
legend_gap = NULL,
heatmap_border = NULL,
annotation_border = NULL,
```

```

fastcluster = NULL,
simple_anno_size = NULL,
show_parent_dend_line = NULL)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| object | a HeatmapList-class object. |
| newpage | whether create a new page for the graphics. If you want to arrange multiple plots in one page, I suggest to use grid.grabExpr . |
| background | Background color of the whole plot. |
| row_title | title on the row. |
| row_title_side | will the title be put on the left or right of the heatmap. |
| row_title_gp | graphic parameters for drawing text. |
| column_title | title on the column. |
| column_title_side | will the title be put on the top or bottom of the heatmap. |
| column_title_gp | graphic parameters for drawing text. |
| heatmap_legend_side | side to put heatmap legend |
| merge_legends | merge heatmap legends and annotation legends to put into one column. |
| show_heatmap_legend | whether show all heatmap legends |
| heatmap_legend_list | use-defined legends which are put after the heatmap legends |
| annotation_legend_side | side of the annotation legends |
| show_annotation_legend | whether show annotation legends |
| annotation_legend_list | user-defined legends which are put after the annotation legends |
| align_heatmap_legend | How to align the legends to heatmap. Possible values are "heatmap_center", "heatmap_top" and "global_center". If the value is NULL, it automatically picks the proper value from the three options. |
| align_annotation_legend | How to align the legends to heatmap. Possible values are "heatmap_center", "heatmap_top" and "global_center". |
| legend_grouping | How the legends are grouped. Values should be "adjusted" or "original". If it is set as "original", all annotation legends are grouped together. |
| gap | gap between heatmaps/annotations |
| ht_gap | same as gap. |
| main_heatmap | index of main heatmap. The value can be a numeric index or the heatmap name |
| padding | padding of the whole plot. The value is a unit vector of length 4, which corresponds to bottom, left, top and right. |

adjust_annotation_extension
whether take annotation name into account when calculating positions of graphic elements.

auto_adjust
whether apply automatic adjustment? The auto-adjustment includes turning off dendrograms, titles and row/columns for non-main heatmaps.

row_dend_side
side of the dendrogram from the main heatmap

row_sub_title_side
side of the row title from the main heatmap

column_dend_side
side of the dendrogram from the main heatmap

column_sub_title_side
side of the column title from the main heatmap

row_gap
this modifies row_gap of the main heatmap

cluster_rows
this modifies cluster_rows of the main heatmap

cluster_row_slices
this modifies cluster_row_slices of the main heatmap

clustering_distance_rows
this modifies clustering_distance_rows of the main heatmap

clustering_method_rows
this modifies clustering_method_rows of the main heatmap

row_dend_width
this modifies row_dend_width of the main heatmap

show_row_dend
this modifies show_row_dend of the main heatmap

row_dend_reorder
this modifies row_dend_reorder of the main heatmap

row_dend_gp
this modifies row_dend_gp of the main heatmap

row_order
this modifies row_order of the main heatmap

km
= this modifies km of the main heatmap

split
this modifies split of the main heatmap

row_km
this modifies row_km of the main heatmap

row_km_repeats
this modifies row_km_repeats of the main heatmap

row_split
this modifies row_split of the main heatmap

height
this modifies height of the main heatmap

heatmap_height
this modifies heatmap_height of the main heatmap

column_gap
this modifies column_gap of the main heatmap

cluster_columns
this modifies cluster_columns of the main heatmap

cluster_column_slices
this modifies cluster_column_slices of the main heatmap

clustering_distance_columns
this modifies clustering_distance_columns of the main heatmap

clustering_method_columns
this modifies clustering_method_columns of the main heatmap

column_dend_width
this modifies column_dend_width of the main heatmap

`show_column_dend` this modifies `show_column_dend` of the main heatmap
`column_dend_reorder` this modifies `column_dend_reorder` of the main heatmap
`column_dend_gp` this modifies `column_dend_gp` of the main heatmap
`column_order` this modifies `column_order` of the main heatmap
`column_km` this modifies `column_km` of the main heatmap
`column_km_repeats` this modifies `column_km_repeats` of the main heatmap
`column_split` this modifies `column_split` of the main heatmap
`width` this modifies `width` of the main heatmap
`heatmap_width` this modifies `heatmap_width` of the main heatmap
`use_raster` this modifies `use_raster` of every heatmap.
`raster_device` this modifies `raster_device` of every heatmap.
`raster_quality` this modifies `raster_quality` of every heatmap.
`raster_device_param` this modifies `raster_device_param` of every heatmap.
`raster_resize` this modifies `raster_resize` of every heatmap.
`post_fun` A self-defined function will be executed after all the heatmaps are drawn.
`save_last` Whether to save the last plot?
`heatmap_row_names_gp` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`heatmap_column_names_gp` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`heatmap_row_title_gp` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`heatmap_column_title_gp` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`legend_title_gp` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`legend_title_position` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`legend_labels_gp` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`legend_grid_height` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`legend_grid_width` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`legend_border` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`legend_gap` Gap between legends. The value should be a vector of two units. One for gaps between vertical legends and one for the horizontal legends. If only one single unit is specified, the same gap set for the vertical and horizontal legends.
`heatmap_border` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`annotation_border` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done

`fastcluster` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`simple_anno_size` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done
`show_parent_dend_line` this set the value in `ht_opt` and reset back after the plot is done

Details

The function first calls `make_layout, HeatmapList-method` to calculate the layout of the heatmap list and the layout of every single heatmap, then makes the plot by re-calling the graphic functions which are already recorded in the layout.

Value

This function returns a `HeatmapList-class` object for which the layout has been created.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/a-list-of-heatmaps.html>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

draw-Legends-method *Draw the Legends*

Description

Draw the Legends

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Legends'
draw(object, x = unit(0.5, "npc"), y = unit(0.5, "npc"), just = "centre", test = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`object` The `grob` object returned by `Legend` or `packLegend`.
`x` The x position of the legends, measured in current viewport.
`y` The y position of the legends, measured in current viewport.
`just` Justification of the legends.
`test` Only used for testing.

Details

In the legend grob, there should always be a viewport attached which is like a wrapper of all the graphic elements in a legend. If in the object, there is already a viewport attached, it will modify the `x`, `y` and `valid.just` of the viewport. If there is not viewport attached, a viewport with specified `x`, `y` and `valid.just` is created and attached.

You can also directly use `grid.draw` to draw the legend object, but you can only control the position of the legends by first creating a parent viewport and adjusting the position of the parent viewport.

Examples

```
lgd = Legend(at = 1:4, title = "foo")
draw(lgd, x = unit(0, "npc"), y = unit(0, "npc"), just = c("left", "bottom"))

# and a similar version of grid.draw
pushViewport(viewport(x = unit(0, "npc"), y = unit(0, "npc"), just = c("left", "bottom")))
grid.draw(lgd)
popViewport()
```

draw-SingleAnnotation-method

Draw the Single Annotation

Description

Draw the Single Annotation

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'SingleAnnotation'
draw(object, index, k = 1, n = 1, test = FALSE,
      anno_mark_param = list())
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>object</code> | A SingleAnnotation-class object. |
| <code>index</code> | A vector of indices. |
| <code>k</code> | The index of the slice. |
| <code>n</code> | Total number of slices. <code>k</code> and <code>n</code> are used to adjust annotation names. E.g. if <code>k</code> is 2 and <code>n</code> is 3, the annotation names are not drawn. |
| <code>test</code> | Is it in test mode? The value can be logical or a text which is plotted as the title of plot. |
| <code>anno_mark_param</code> | It contains specific parameters for drawing anno_mark . |

Value

No value is returned.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

draw_annotation-Heatmap-method

Draw Heatmap Annotations on the Heatmap

Description

Draw Heatmap Annotations on the Heatmap

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
draw_annotation(object, which = c("top", "bottom", "left", "right"), k = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--|
| object | A Heatmap-class object. |
| which | The position of the heatmap annotation. |
| k | Slice index. |
| ... | Pass to viewport which includes the complete heatmap annotation. |

Details

A viewport is created which contains column/top annotations.

The function calls [draw,HeatmapAnnotation-method](#) to draw the annotations.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

This function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

draw_annotation_legend-HeatmapList-method
Draw legends for All Annotations

Description

Draw legends for All Annotations

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'  
draw_annotation_legend(object, legend_list = list(), ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|---|
| object | A HeatmapList-class object. |
| legend_list | A list of self-defined legends, should be wrapped into grob objects. It is normally constructed by Legend . |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

We call the "annotation legends" as the secondary legends. For horizontal heatmap list, the legends are those from all top/bottom annotations, and for vertical heatmap list, the legends are those from all left/right annotations.

A viewport is created which contains annotation legends.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

This function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

draw_dend-Heatmap-method

Draw Heatmap Dendrograms

Description

Draw Heatmap Dendrograms

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'  
draw_dend(object,  
  which = c("row", "column"), k = 1, max_height = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| object | A Heatmap-class object. |
| which | Are the dendrograms put on the row or on the column of the heatmap? |
| k | Slice index. |
| max_height | maximal height of dendrogram. |
| ... | Pass to viewport which includes the complete heatmap dendrograms. |

Details

A viewport is created which contains dendrograms.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

This function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

[grid.dendrogram](#)

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

draw_dimnames-Heatmap-method

Draw row names or column names

Description

Draw row names or column names

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'  
draw_dimnames(object,  
  which = c("row", "column"), k = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--|
| object | A Heatmap-class object. |
| which | Are the names put on the row or on the column of the heatmap? |
| k | Slice index. |
| ... | Pass to viewport which includes the complete heatmap row/column names. |

Details

A viewport is created which contains row names or column names.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

This function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

draw_heatmap_body-Heatmap-method
Draw Heatmap Body

Description

Draw Heatmap Body

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'  
draw_heatmap_body(object, kr = 1, kc = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--|
| object | A Heatmap-class object. |
| kr | Row slice index. |
| kc | Column slice index. |
| ... | Pass to viewport which includes the slice of heatmap body. |

Details

A viewport is created which contains subset rows and columns of the heatmap.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

This function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

draw_heatmap_legend-HeatmapList-method

Draw legends for All Heatmaps

Description

Draw legends for All Heatmaps

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'  
draw_heatmap_legend(object, legend_list = list(), ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|---|
| object | A HeatmapList-class object. |
| legend_list | A list of self-defined legends, should be wrapped into grob objects. It is normally constructed by Legend . |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

Actually we call the "heatmap legends" as the main legends. For horizontal heatmap list, the legends are those from heatmap/row annotation/left/right annotation. For vertical heatmap list, the legends are those from heatmap/column annotation/top/bottom annotation. if `merge_legends` is true in [draw,HeatmapList-method](#), then it contains all legends shown on the plot.

A viewport is created which contains heatmap legends.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

This function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

draw_heatmap_list-HeatmapList-method
Draw the List of Heatmaps

Description

Draw the List of Heatmaps

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'  
draw_heatmap_list(object)
```

Arguments

object A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

Details

It only draws the list of heatmaps without legends and titles.
This function is only for internal use.

Value

This function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

draw_title-dispatch *Method dispatch page for draw_title*

Description

Method dispatch page for draw_title.

Dispatch

draw_title can be dispatched on following classes:

- [draw_title, HeatmapList-method, HeatmapList-class](#) class method
- [draw_title, Heatmap-method, Heatmap-class](#) class method

Examples

```
# no example
NULL
```

draw_title-Heatmap-method

Draw Heatmap Title

Description

Draw Heatmap Title

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
draw_title(object,
  which = c("row", "column"), k = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|---|
| object | A Heatmap-class object. |
| which | Is title put on the row or on the column of the heatmap? |
| k | Slice index. |
| ... | Pass to viewport which includes the complete heatmap title. |

Details

A viewport is created which contains heatmap title.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

This function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

draw_title-HeatmapList-method
Draw Heatmap List Title

Description

Draw Heatmap List Title

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'  
draw_title(object,  
  which = c("column", "row"))
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|---|
| object | A HeatmapList-class object. |
| which | Is it a row title or a column title. |

Details

A viewport is created which contains heatmap list title.
This function is only for internal use.

Value

This function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

extract_comb *Extract Elements in a Combination set*

Description

Extract Elements in a Combination set

Usage

```
extract_comb(m, comb_name)
```

Arguments

`m` A combination matrix returned by `make_comb_mat`.
`comb_name` The valid combination set name should be from `comb_name`.

Details

It returns the combination set.

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
lt = list(a = sample(letters, 10),
         b = sample(letters, 15),
         c = sample(letters, 20))
m = make_comb_mat(lt)
extract_comb(m, "110")
```

frequencyHeatmap

Visualize Frequency Distribution by Heatmap

Description

Visualize Frequency Distribution by Heatmap

Usage

```
frequencyHeatmap(data,
  breaks = "Sturges",
  stat = c("count", "density", "proportion"),

  col = brewer.pal(9, "Blues"),
  color_space = "LAB",
  ylab = deparse(substitute(data)),
  column_title = paste0("Frequency heatmap of ", deparse(substitute(data))),
  title = column_title,
  ylim = NULL,
  range = ylim,

  title_gp = gpar(fontsize = 14),
  ylab_gp = gpar(fontsize = 12),
  tick_label_gp = gpar(fontsize = 10),

  column_order = NULL,
  column_names_side = "bottom",
  show_column_names = TRUE,
  column_names_max_height = unit(6, "cm"),
  column_names_gp = gpar(fontsize = 12),
  column_names_rot = 90,
  cluster_columns = FALSE,

  use_3d = FALSE,
  ...)
```


Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| data | A matrix or a list. If it is a matrix, density is calculated by columns. |
| breaks | Pass to hist . Please only set equal bin size. |
| stat | Statistic to use. |
| col | A vector of colors that density values are mapped to. |
| color_space | The color space in which colors are interpolated. Pass to colorRamp2 . |
| ylab | Label on y-axis. |
| column_title | Title of the heatmap. |
| title | Same as column_title. |
| ylim | Ranges on the y-axis. |
| range | Same as ylim. |
| title_gp | Graphic parameters for title. |
| ylab_gp | Graphic parameters for y-labels. |
| tick_label_gp | Graphic parameters for y-ticks. |
| column_order | Order of columns. |
| column_names_side | Pass to Heatmap . |
| show_column_names | Pass to Heatmap . |
| column_names_max_height | Pass to Heatmap . |
| column_names_gp | Pass to Heatmap . |
| column_names_rot | Pass to Heatmap . |
| cluster_columns | Whether cluster columns? |
| use_3d | Whether to visualize the frequencies as a 3D heatmap with Heatmap3D ? |
| ... | Pass to Heatmap or Heatmap3D (if use_3d = TRUE). |

Value

A [Heatmap-class](#) object. It can only add other heatmaps/annotations vertically.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
matrix = matrix(rnorm(100), 10); colnames(matrix) = letters[1:10]
frequencyHeatmap(matrix)
frequencyHeatmap(matrix, use_3d = TRUE)
```

| | |
|----------------|---|
| full_comb_code | <i>Full set of code of combination sets</i> |
|----------------|---|

Description

Full set of code of combination sets

Usage

```
full_comb_code(n, complement = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| n | Number of sets |
| complement | Whether include the code for complement set? |

Examples

```
full_comb_code(2)
full_comb_code(3)
full_comb_code(4)
full_comb_code(4, TRUE)
```

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| getXY_in_parent_vp | <i>Convert XY in a Parent Viewport</i> |
|--------------------|--|

Description

Convert XY in a Parent Viewport

Usage

```
getXY_in_parent_vp(u, vp_name = "ROOT")
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------|--|
| u | A list of two units which correspond to x and y. |
| vp_name | The name of the parent viewport. |

Details

It converts a coordinate measured in current viewport to the coordinate in a parent viewport.

In the conversion, all units are recalculated as absolute units, so if you change the size of the interactive graphic window, you need to rerun the function.

Value

A list of two units.

Examples

```
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(x = 0.5, y = 0.5, width = 0.5, height = 0.5, just = c("left", "bottom")))
grid.rect()
grid.points(x = unit(2, "cm"), y = unit(2, "cm"), pch = 1)
u = list(x = unit(2, "cm"), y = unit(2, "cm"))
u2 = getXY_in_parent_vp(u)
popViewport()
grid.rect(gp = gpar(col = "red"))
grid.points(x = u2$x, u2$y, pch = 2)
```

get_color_mapping_list-HeatmapAnnotation-method
Get a List of ColorMapping objects

Description

Get a List of ColorMapping objects

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapAnnotation'
get_color_mapping_list(object)
```

Arguments

object A [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object.

Details

Color mappings for visible simple annotations are only returned.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

A list of [ColorMapping-class](#) objects or an empty list.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

get_legend_param_list-HeatmapAnnotation-method
Get a List of Annotation Legend Parameters

Description

Get a List of Annotation Legend Parameters

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapAnnotation'  
get_legend_param_list(object)
```

Arguments

object A [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object.

Details

The annotation legend parameters for visible simple annotations are only returned.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

A list.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

grid.annotation_axis *Draw Annotation Axis*

Description

Draw Annotation Axis

Usage

```
grid.annotation_axis(at = NULL, labels = at, labels_rot = 0, gp = gpar(),  
                    side = "left", facing = "outside", direction = "normal")
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| at | Break values. If it is not specified, it is inferred from data scale in current viewport. |
| labels | Corresponding labels. |
| labels_rot | Rotations of labels. |
| gp | Graphic parameters. |
| side | side of the axis of the annotation viewport. |
| facing | Facing of the axis. |
| direction | direction of the axis. Value should be "normal" or "reverse". |

Details

It uses [annotation_axis_grob](#) to construct the grob object, then use [grid.draw](#) to draw the axis.

Examples

```
# See examples in `annotation_axis_grob`
NULL
```

grid.boxplot

Draw a Single Boxplot

Description

Draw a Single Boxplot

Usage

```
grid.boxplot(value, pos, outline = TRUE, box_width = 0.6,
  pch = 1, size = unit(2, "mm"), gp = gpar(fill = "#CCCCCC"),
  direction = c("vertical", "horizontal"))
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|--|
| value | A vector of numeric values. |
| pos | Position of the boxplot. |
| outline | Whether draw outlines? |
| box_width | width of the box. |
| pch | Point type. |
| size | Point size. |
| gp | Graphic parameters. |
| direction | Whether the box is vertical or horizontal. |

Details

All the values are measured with native coordinate.

Examples

```
lt = list(rnorm(100), rnorm(100))
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0.5, 2.5), yscale = range(lt)))
grid.boxplot(lt[[1]], pos = 1, gp = gpar(fill = "red"))
grid.boxplot(lt[[2]], pos = 2, gp = gpar(fill = "green"))
popViewport()
```

| | |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| grid.dendrogram | <i>Draw the Dendrogram</i> |
|-----------------|----------------------------|

Description

Draw the Dendrogram

Usage

```
grid.dendrogram(dend, ..., test = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------|---|
| dend | A dendrogram object. |
| ... | Pass to dendrogramGrob . |
| test | Is it in test mode? If it is in test mode, a viewport is created by calculating proper xlim and ylim. |

Details

[grid.dendrogram](#) supports drawing dendrograms with self-defined leaf positions. The positions of leaves can be defined by [adjust_dend_by_x](#). Also the dendrogram can be customized by setting the edgePar attribute for each node (basically for controlling the style of segments), e.g. by [color_branches](#).

To draw the dendrogram, a viewport should be firstly created. [dend_xy](#) can be used to get the positions of leaves and height of the dendrogram.

Examples

```
m = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
dend = as.dendrogram(hclust(dist(m)))
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0, 10.5), yscale = c(0, dend_heights(dend)),
  width = 0.9, height = 0.9))
grid.dendrogram(dend)
popViewport()

grid.dendrogram(dend, test = TRUE)

require(dendextend)
dend = color_branches(dend, k = 2)
dend = adjust_dend_by_x(dend, unit(sort(runif(10)*10), "cm"))
grid.dendrogram(dend, test = TRUE)
```

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| grid.draw.Legends | <i>Draw the Legends</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------------|

Description

Draw the Legends

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'Legends'
grid.draw(x, recording = TRUE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|--|
| x | The grob object returned by Legend or packLegend . |
| recording | Pass to grid.draw . |

Details

This function is actually an S3 method of the Legends class for the [grid.draw](#) general method. It applies [grid.draw](#) on the grob slot of the object.

Examples

```
lgd = Legend(at = 1:4, title = "foo")
pushViewport(viewport(x = unit(0, "npc"), y = unit(0, "npc"), just = c("left", "bottom")))
grid.draw(lgd)
popViewport()
```

| | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| grid.textbox | <i>Draw multiple texts in a box</i> |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|

Description

Draw multiple texts in a box

Usage

```
grid.textbox(text, x = unit(0.5, "npc"), y = unit(0.5, "npc"), gp = gpar(), ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------|--|
| text | A vector of texts. The value can be single words or phrases/sentences. |
| x | X position. |
| y | Y position. |
| gp | Graphics parameters of texts. |
| ... | Pass to textbox_grob . |

Details

All details can be found in the help page of [textbox_grob](#).

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

 gt_render

Mark the text for the rendering by gridtext package

Description

Mark the text for the rendering by gridtext package

Usage

```
gt_render(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x` Text labels. The value can be a vector.
`...` Other parameters passed to [richtext_grob](#).

Details

Text marked by [gt_render](#) will be rendered by [richtext_grob](#) function.

Examples

```
if(requireNamespace("gridtext")) {
  mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
  rownames(mat) = letters[1:10]
  ht = Heatmap(mat,
    column_title = gt_render("Some <span style='color:blue'>blue text **in bold.**</span><br>And *italics text.*"),
    column_title_gp = gpar(box_fill = "orange"),
    row_labels = gt_render(letters[1:10], padding = unit(c(2, 10, 2, 10), "pt")),
    row_names_gp = gpar(box_col = "red"),
    row_km = 2,
    row_title = gt_render(c("title1", "title2")),
    row_title_gp = gpar(box_fill = "yellow"),
    heatmap_legend_param = list(
      title = gt_render("<span style='color:orange'>**Legend title**</span>"),
      title_gp = gpar(box_fill = "grey"),
      at = c(-3, 0, 3),
      labels = gt_render(c("*negative* three", "zero", "*positive* three"))
    )
  )
  ht = rowAnnotation(
    foo = anno_text(gt_render(sapply(LETTERS[1:10], strrep, 10), align_widths = TRUE),
      gp = gpar(box_col = "blue", box_lwd = 2),
      just = "right",
      location = unit(1, "npc")
    )
  )
}
```



```

    )) + ht
  draw(ht)

}

```

Heatmap

*Constructor method for Heatmap class***Description**

Constructor method for Heatmap class

Usage

```

Heatmap(matrix, col, name,
  na_col = "grey",
  color_space = "LAB",
  rect_gp = gpar(col = NA),
  border = NA,
  border_gp = gpar(col = "black"),
  cell_fun = NULL,
  layer_fun = NULL,
  jitter = FALSE,

  row_title = character(0),
  row_title_side = c("left", "right"),
  row_title_gp = gpar(fontsize = 13.2),
  row_title_rot = switch(row_title_side[1], "left" = 90, "right" = 270),
  column_title = character(0),
  column_title_side = c("top", "bottom"),
  column_title_gp = gpar(fontsize = 13.2),
  column_title_rot = 0,

  cluster_rows = TRUE,
  cluster_row_slices = TRUE,
  clustering_distance_rows = "euclidean",
  clustering_method_rows = "complete",
  row_dend_side = c("left", "right"),
  row_dend_width = unit(10, "mm"),
  show_row_dend = TRUE,
  row_dend_reorder = is.logical(cluster_rows) || is.function(cluster_rows),
  row_dend_gp = gpar(),
  cluster_columns = TRUE,
  cluster_column_slices = TRUE,
  clustering_distance_columns = "euclidean",
  clustering_method_columns = "complete",
  column_dend_side = c("top", "bottom"),
  column_dend_height = unit(10, "mm"),
  show_column_dend = TRUE,
  column_dend_gp = gpar(),
  column_dend_reorder = is.logical(cluster_columns) || is.function(cluster_columns),

```

```

row_order = NULL,
column_order = NULL,

row_labels = rownames(matrix),
row_names_side = c("right", "left"),
show_row_names = TRUE,
row_names_max_width = unit(6, "cm"),
row_names_gp = gpar(fontsize = 12),
row_names_rot = 0,
row_names_centered = FALSE,
column_labels = colnames(matrix),
column_names_side = c("bottom", "top"),
show_column_names = TRUE,
column_names_max_height = unit(6, "cm"),
column_names_gp = gpar(fontsize = 12),
column_names_rot = 90,
column_names_centered = FALSE,

top_annotation = NULL,
bottom_annotation = NULL,
left_annotation = NULL,
right_annotation = NULL,

km = 1,
split = NULL,
row_km = km,
row_km_repeats = 1,
row_split = split,
column_km = 1,
column_km_repeats = 1,
column_split = NULL,
gap = unit(1, "mm"),
row_gap = unit(1, "mm"),
column_gap = unit(1, "mm"),
show_parent_dend_line = ht_opt$show_parent_dend_line,

heatmap_width = unit(1, "npc"),
width = NULL,
heatmap_height = unit(1, "npc"),
height = NULL,

show_heatmap_legend = TRUE,
heatmap_legend_param = list(title = name),

use_raster = NULL,
raster_device = c("png", "jpeg", "tiff", "CairoPNG", "CairoJPEG", "CairoTIFF", "agg_png"),
raster_quality = 1,
raster_device_param = list(),
raster_resize_mat = FALSE,
raster_by_magick = requireNamespace("magick", quietly = TRUE),
raster_magick_filter = NULL,

```

```
post_fun = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>matrix</code> | A matrix. Either numeric or character. If it is a simple vector, it will be converted to a one-column matrix. |
| <code>col</code> | A vector of colors if the color mapping is discrete or a color mapping function if the matrix is continuous numbers (should be generated by <code>colorRamp2</code>). If the matrix is continuous, the value can also be a vector of colors so that colors can be interpolated. Pass to <code>ColorMapping</code> . For more details and examples, please refer to https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/a-single-heatmap.html#colors . |
| <code>name</code> | Name of the heatmap. By default the heatmap name is used as the title of the heatmap legend. |
| <code>na_col</code> | Color for NA values. |
| <code>rect_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for drawing rectangles (for heatmap body). The value should be specified by <code>gpar</code> and <code>fill</code> parameter is ignored. |
| <code>color_space</code> | The color space in which colors are interpolated. Only used if <code>matrix</code> is numeric and <code>col</code> is a vector of colors. Pass to <code>colorRamp2</code> . |
| <code>border</code> | Whether draw border. The value can be logical or a string of color. |
| <code>border_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for the borders. If you want to set different parameters for different heatmap slices, please consider to use <code>decorate_heatmap_body</code> . |
| <code>cell_fun</code> | Self-defined function to add graphics on each cell. Seven parameters will be passed into this function: <code>j</code> , <code>i</code> , <code>x</code> , <code>y</code> , <code>width</code> , <code>height</code> , <code>fill</code> which are column index, row index in <code>matrix</code> , coordinate of the cell, the width and height of the cell and the filled color. <code>x</code> , <code>y</code> , <code>width</code> and <code>height</code> are all <code>unit</code> objects. |
| <code>layer_fun</code> | Similar as <code>cell_fun</code> , but is vectorized. Check https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/a-single-heatmap.html#customize-the-heatmap-body . |
| <code>jitter</code> | Random shifts added to the matrix. The value can be logical or a single numeric value. If it is <code>TRUE</code> , random values from uniform distribution between 0 and 1e-10 are generated. If it is a numeric value, the range for the uniform distribution is (0, <code>jitter</code>). It is mainly to solve the problem of "Error: node stack overflow" when there are too many identical rows/columns for plotting the dendrograms. ADD: From version 2.5.6, the error of node stack overflow has been fixed, now this argument is ignored. |
| <code>row_title</code> | Title on the row. |
| <code>row_title_side</code> | Will the title be put on the left or right of the heatmap? |
| <code>row_title_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for row title. |
| <code>row_title_rot</code> | Rotation of row title. |
| <code>column_title</code> | Title on the column. |
| <code>column_title_side</code> | Will the title be put on the top or bottom of the heatmap? |
| <code>column_title_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for column title. |
| <code>column_title_rot</code> | Rotation of column titles. |

| | |
|--|--|
| <code>cluster_rows</code> | If the value is a logical, it controls whether to make cluster on rows. The value can also be a <code>hclust</code> or a <code>dendrogram</code> which already contains clustering. Check https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/a-single-heatmap.html#clustering . |
| <code>cluster_row_slices</code> | If rows are split into slices, whether perform clustering on the slice means? |
| <code>clustering_distance_rows</code> | It can be a pre-defined character which is in ("euclidean", "maximum", "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski", "pearson", "spearman", "kendall"). It can also be a function. If the function has one argument, the input argument should be a matrix and the returned value should be a <code>dist</code> object. If the function has two arguments, the input arguments are two vectors and the function calculates distance between these two vectors. |
| <code>clustering_method_rows</code> | Method to perform hierarchical clustering, pass to <code>hclust</code> . |
| <code>row_dend_side</code> | Should the row dendrogram be put on the left or right of the heatmap? |
| <code>row_dend_width</code> | Width of the row dendrogram, should be a <code>unit</code> object. |
| <code>show_row_dend</code> | Whether show row dendrogram? |
| <code>row_dend_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for the dendrogram segments. If users already provide a <code>dendrogram</code> object with edges rendered, this argument will be ignored. |
| <code>row_dend_reorder</code> | Apply reordering on row dendrograms. The value can be a logical value or a vector which contains weight which is used to reorder rows. The reordering is applied by <code>reorder.dendrogram</code> . |
| <code>cluster_columns</code> | Whether make cluster on columns? Same settings as <code>cluster_rows</code> . |
| <code>cluster_column_slices</code> | If columns are split into slices, whether perform clustering on the slice means? |
| <code>clustering_distance_columns</code> | Same setting as <code>clustering_distance_rows</code> . |
| <code>clustering_method_columns</code> | Method to perform hierarchical clustering, pass to <code>hclust</code> . |
| <code>column_dend_side</code> | Should the column dendrogram be put on the top or bottom of the heatmap? |
| <code>column_dend_height</code> | height of the column cluster, should be a <code>unit</code> object. |
| <code>show_column_dend</code> | Whether show column dendrogram? |
| <code>column_dend_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for dendrogram segments. Same settings as <code>row_dend_gp</code> . |
| <code>column_dend_reorder</code> | Apply reordering on column dendrograms. Same settings as <code>row_dend_reorder</code> . |
| <code>row_order</code> | Order of rows. Manually setting row order turns off clustering. |
| <code>column_order</code> | Order of column. |
| <code>row_labels</code> | Optional row labels which are put as row names in the heatmap. |
| <code>row_names_side</code> | Should the row names be put on the left or right of the heatmap? |
| <code>show_row_names</code> | Whether show row names. |

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code>row_names_max_width</code> | Maximum width of row names viewport. |
| <code>row_names_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for row names. |
| <code>row_names_rot</code> | Rotation of row names. |
| <code>row_names_centered</code> | Should row names put centered? |
| <code>column_labels</code> | Optional column labels which are put as column names in the heatmap. |
| <code>column_names_side</code> | Should the column names be put on the top or bottom of the heatmap? |
| <code>column_names_max_height</code> | Maximum height of column names viewport. |
| <code>show_column_names</code> | Whether show column names. |
| <code>column_names_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for drawing text. |
| <code>column_names_rot</code> | Rotation of column names. |
| <code>column_names_centered</code> | Should column names put centered? |
| <code>top_annotation</code> | A HeatmapAnnotation object. |
| <code>bottom_annotation</code> | A HeatmapAnnotation object. |
| <code>left_annotation</code> | It should be specified by rowAnnotation . |
| <code>right_annotation</code> | it should be specified by rowAnnotation . |
| <code>km</code> | Apply k-means clustering on rows. If the value is larger than 1, the heatmap will be split by rows according to the k-means clustering. For each row slice, hierarchical clustering is still applied with parameters above. |
| <code>split</code> | A vector or a data frame by which the rows are split. But if <code>cluster_rows</code> is a clustering object, <code>split</code> can be a single number indicating to split the dendrogram by cutree . |
| <code>row_km</code> | Same as <code>km</code> . |
| <code>row_km_repeats</code> | Number of k-means runs to get a consensus k-means clustering. Note if <code>row_km_repeats</code> is set to more than one, the final number of groups might be smaller than <code>row_km</code> , but this might means the original <code>row_km</code> is not a good choice. |
| <code>row_split</code> | Same as <code>split</code> . |
| <code>column_km</code> | K-means clustering on columns. |
| <code>column_km_repeats</code> | Number of k-means runs to get a consensus k-means clustering. Similar as <code>row_km_repeats</code> . |
| <code>column_split</code> | Split on columns. For heatmap splitting, please refer to https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/a-single-heatmap.html#heatmap-split . |
| <code>gap</code> | Gap between row slices if the heatmap is split by rows. The value should be a unit object. |
| <code>row_gap</code> | Same as <code>gap</code> . |

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <code>column_gap</code> | Gap between column slices. |
| <code>show_parent_dend_line</code> | When heatmap is split, whether to add a dashed line to mark parent dendrogram and children dendrograms? |
| <code>width</code> | Width of the heatmap body. |
| <code>height</code> | Height of the heatmap body. |
| <code>heatmap_width</code> | Width of the whole heatmap (including heatmap components) |
| <code>heatmap_height</code> | Height of the whole heatmap (including heatmap components). Check https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/a-single-heatmap.html#size-of-the-heatmap . |
| <code>show_heatmap_legend</code> | Whether show heatmap legend? |
| <code>heatmap_legend_param</code> | A list contains parameters for the heatmap legends. See color_mapping_legend , ColorMapping-me for all available parameters. |
| <code>use_raster</code> | Whether render the heatmap body as a raster image. It helps to reduce file size when the matrix is huge. If number of rows or columns is more than 2000, it is by default turned on. Note if <code>cell_fun</code> is set, <code>use_raster</code> is enforced to be FALSE. |
| <code>raster_device</code> | Graphic device which is used to generate the raster image. |
| <code>raster_quality</code> | A value larger than 1. |
| <code>raster_device_param</code> | A list of further parameters for the selected graphic device. For raster image support, please check https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/a-single-heatmap.html#heatmap-as-raster-image . |
| <code>raster_resize_mat</code> | Whether resize the matrix to let the dimension of the matrix the same as the dimension of the raster image? The value can be logical. If it is TRUE, <code>mean</code> is used to summarize the sub matrix which corresponds to a single pixel. The value can also be a summary function, e.g. <code>max</code> . |
| <code>raster_by_magick</code> | Whether to use <code>image_resize</code> to scale the image. |
| <code>raster_magick_filter</code> | Pass to filter argument of <code>image_resize</code> . A character scalar and all possible values are in <code>filter_types</code> . The default is "Lanczos". |
| <code>post_fun</code> | A function which will be executed after the heatmap list is drawn. |

Details

The initialization function only applies parameter checking and fill values to the slots with some validation.

Following methods can be applied to the `Heatmap-class` object:

- `show`, [Heatmap-method](#): draw a single heatmap with default parameters
- `draw`, [Heatmap-method](#): draw a single heatmap.
- + or `%v%` append heatmaps and annotations to a list of heatmaps.

The constructor function pretends to be a high-level graphic function because the `show` method of the `Heatmap-class` object actually plots the graphics.

Value

A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/a-single-heatmap.html>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| Heatmap-class | <i>Class for a Single Heatmap</i> |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|

Description

Class for a Single Heatmap

Details

The [Heatmap-class](#) is not responsible for heatmap legend and annotation legends. The [draw, Heatmap-method](#) method constructs a [HeatmapList-class](#) object which only contains one single heatmap and call [draw, HeatmapList-method](#) to make the complete heatmap.

Methods

The [Heatmap-class](#) provides following methods:

- [Heatmap](#): constructor method.
- [draw, Heatmap-method](#): draw a single heatmap.
- [add_heatmap, Heatmap-method](#) append heatmaps and annotations to a list of heatmaps.
- [row_order, HeatmapList-method](#): get order of rows
- [column_order, HeatmapList-method](#): get order of columns
- [row_dend, HeatmapList-method](#): get row dendrograms
- [column_dend, HeatmapList-method](#): get column dendrograms

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

`Heatmap3D`*3D Heatmap*

Description

3D Heatmap

Usage

```
Heatmap3D(matrix,  
  ...,  
  bar_rel_width = 0.6,  
  bar_rel_height = 0.6,  
  bar_max_length = unit(1, "cm"),  
  bar_angle = 60,  
  row_names_side = "left",  
  show_row_dend = FALSE,  
  show_column_dend = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code>matrix</code> | The input matrix. Values should be non-negative. |
| <code>...</code> | All pass to Heatmap . |
| <code>bar_rel_width</code> | A factor between 0 and 1. |
| <code>bar_rel_height</code> | A factor between 0 and 1. |
| <code>bar_max_length</code> | Maximal length of bars. Value should be in absolute unit. |
| <code>bar_angle</code> | Angle for the projection. |
| <code>row_names_side</code> | Row names are by default put on the left side of the heatmap. |
| <code>show_row_dend</code> | By default the dendrogram is not drawn. |
| <code>show_column_dend</code> | By default the dendrogram is not drawn. |

Details

For large matrices, the plotting might be slow.

Examples

```
m = matrix(sample(100, 36), 6)  
Heatmap3D(m)
```

HeatmapAnnotation *Constructor Method for HeatmapAnnotation class*

Description

Constructor Method for HeatmapAnnotation class

Usage

```
HeatmapAnnotation(...,
  df = NULL, name, col, na_col = "grey",
  annotation_legend_param = list(),
  show_legend = TRUE,
  which = c("column", "row"),
  gp = gpar(col = NA),
  border = FALSE,
  gap = unit(1, "points"),

  show_annotation_name = TRUE,
  annotation_label = NULL,
  annotation_name_gp = gpar(),
  annotation_name_offset = NULL,
  annotation_name_side = ifelse(which == "column", "right", "bottom"),
  annotation_name_rot = NULL,
  annotation_name_align = FALSE,

  annotation_height = NULL,
  annotation_width = NULL,
  height = NULL,
  width = NULL,
  simple_anno_size = ht_opt$simple_anno_size,
  simple_anno_size_adjust = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| ... | Name-value pairs where the names correspond to annotation names and values can be a vector, a matrix and an annotation function. Each pair is sent to SingleAnnotation to construct a single annotation. |
| df | A data frame. Each column will be treated as a simple annotation. The data frame must have column names. |
| name | Name of the heatmap annotation, optional. |
| col | A list of colors which contain color mapping to df or simple annotations defined in See SingleAnnotation for how to set colors. |
| na_col | Color for NA values in simple annotations. |
| annotation_legend_param | A list which contains parameters for annotation legends. See color_mapping_legend , ColorMapping for all possible options. |
| show_legend | Whether show annotation legends. The value can be one single value or a vector. |
| which | Are these row annotations or column annotations? |

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <code>gp</code> | Graphic parameters for simple annotations (with <code>fill</code> parameter ignored). |
| <code>border</code> | border of single annotations. |
| <code>gap</code> | Gap between annotations. It can be a single value or a vector of <code>unit</code> objects. |
| <code>show_annotation_name</code> | Whether show annotation names? For column annotation, annotation names are drawn either on the left or the right, and for row annotations, names are drawn either on top or at the bottom. The value can be a vector. |
| <code>annotation_label</code> | Labels for the annotations. By default it is the same as individual annotation names. |
| <code>annotation_name_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for annotation names. Graphic parameters can be vectors. |
| <code>annotation_name_offset</code> | Offset to the annotation names, a <code>unit</code> object. The value can be a vector. |
| <code>annotation_name_side</code> | Side of the annotation names. |
| <code>annotation_name_rot</code> | Rotation of the annotation names. The value can be a vector. |
| <code>annotation_name_align</code> | Whether to align the annotation names. |
| <code>annotation_height</code> | Height of each annotation if annotations are column annotations. |
| <code>annotation_width</code> | Width of each annotation if annotations are row annotations. |
| <code>height</code> | Height of the whole column annotations. |
| <code>width</code> | Width of the whole heatmap annotations. |
| <code>simple_anno_size</code> | Size of the simple annotation. |
| <code>simple_anno_size_adjust</code> | Whether also adjust the size of simple annotations when adjusting the whole heatmap annotation. |

Details

For arguments `show_legend`, `border`, `annotation_name_offset`, `annotation_name_side`, `annotation_name_rot`, `show_annotation_name`, they can be set as named vectors to modify values for some of the annotations, e.g. assuming you have an annotation with name `foo`, you can specify `border = c(foo = TRUE)` in `HeatmapAnnotation`.

There are three ways to specify heatmap annotations:

1. If the annotation is simply a vector or a matrix, it can be specified like `HeatmapAnnotation(foo = 1:10)`.
2. If the annotations are already stored as a data frame, it can be specified like `HeatmapAnnotation(df = df)`.
3. For complex annotations, users can use the pre-defined annotation functions such as `anno_points`: `HeatmapAnnotation(foo = anno_points(1:10))`.

For more details and examples, please check <https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/heatmap-annotations.html>.

Value

A `HeatmapAnnotation-class` object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

There are two helper functions: [rowAnnotation](#) and [columnAnnotation](#).

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

HeatmapAnnotation-class

Class for Heatmap Annotations

Description

Class for Heatmap Annotations

Details

A complex heatmap contains a list of annotations which are represented as graphics placed on rows and columns. The [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) contains a list of single annotations which are represented as a list of [SingleAnnotation-class](#) objects.

Methods

The [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) provides following methods:

- [HeatmapAnnotation](#): constructor method.
- [draw,HeatmapAnnotation-method](#): draw the annotations.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|-------------|---|
| HeatmapList | <i>Constructor method for HeatmapList class</i> |
|-------------|---|

Description

Constructor method for HeatmapList class

Usage

```
HeatmapList(...)
```

Arguments

```
...          arguments
```

Details

There is no public constructor method for the [HeatmapList-class](#).

Value

No value is returned.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| HeatmapList-class | <i>Class for a list of heatmaps</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|

Description

Class for a list of heatmaps

Details

A heatmap list is defined as a list of heatmaps and annotations.

Methods

The `HeatmapList`-class provides following methods:

- `draw,HeatmapList-method`: draw the list of heatmaps and row annotations.
- `add_heatmap,HeatmapList-method`: add heatmaps to the list of heatmaps.
- `row_order,HeatmapList-method`: get order of rows
- `column_order,HeatmapList-method`: get order of columns
- `row_dend,HeatmapList-method`: get row dendrograms
- `column_dend,HeatmapList-method`: get column dendrograms

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

heatmap_legend_size-HeatmapList-method
Size of the Heatmap Legends

Description

Size of the Heatmap Legends

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'
heatmap_legend_size(object, legend_list = list(), ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>object</code> | A <code>HeatmapList</code> -class object. |
| <code>legend_list</code> | A list of self-defined legend, should be wrapped into <code>grob</code> objects. It is normally constructed by <code>Legend</code> . |
| <code>...</code> | Other arguments. |

Details

Internally, all heatmap legends are packed by `packLegend` as a single `grob` object.
This function is only for internal use.

Value

A `unit` object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

```
height.AnnotationFunction
Height of the AnnotationFunction Object
```

Description

Height of the AnnotationFunction Object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'AnnotationFunction'
height(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x The `AnnotationFunction-class` object.
... Other arguments.

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
anno = anno_points(1:10)
ComplexHeatmap::height(anno)
anno = anno_points(1:10, which = "row")
ComplexHeatmap::height(anno)
```

```
height.Heatmap           Height of the Heatmap
```

Description

Height of the Heatmap

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'Heatmap'
height(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x The [HeatmapList-class](#) object returned by `draw, Heatmap-method`.
... Other arguments.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

height.HeatmapAnnotation
Height of the HeatmapAnnotation Object

Description

Height of the HeatmapAnnotation Object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'  
height(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x The [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object.
... Other arguments.

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

height.HeatmapList *Height of the Heatmap List*

Description

Height of the Heatmap List

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapList'  
height(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x The [HeatmapList-class](#) object returned by [draw, HeatmapList-method](#).
... Other arguments.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

height.Legends *Height of the Legends*

Description

Height of the Legends

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'Legends'  
height(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x The [grob](#) object returned by [Legend](#) or [packLegend](#).
... Other arguments.

Value

The returned unit x is always in mm.

Examples

```
lgd = Legend(labels = 1:10, title = "foo", legend_gp = gpar(fill = "red"))  
ComplexHeatmap:::height(lgd)
```

```
height.SingleAnnotation
```

Height of the SingleAnnotation object

Description

Height of the SingleAnnotation object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'SingleAnnotation'  
height(x, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----|--|
| x | The SingleAnnotation-class object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

```
heightAssign.AnnotationFunction
```

Assign the Height to the AnnotationFunction Object

Description

Assign the Height to the AnnotationFunction Object

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class 'AnnotationFunction'  
height(x, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| x | The AnnotationFunction-class object. |
| value | A unit object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

```
heightAssign.HeatmapAnnotation
```

Assign the Height to the HeatmapAnnotation Object

Description

Assign the Height to the HeatmapAnnotation Object

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'
height(x, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|---|
| x | The HeatmapAnnotation-class object. |
| value | A unit object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

```
heightAssign.SingleAnnotation
```

Assign the Height to the SingleAnnotation Object

Description

Assign the Height to the SingleAnnotation Object

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class 'SingleAnnotation'
height(x, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

- x The [SingleAnnotation-class](#) object.
- value A [unit](#) object.
- ... Other arguments.

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

`heightDetails.annotation_axis`
Height for annotation_axis Grob

Description

Height for annotation_axis Grob

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'annotation_axis'  
heightDetails(x)
```

Arguments

- x The annotation_axis grob returned by [annotation_axis_grob](#).

Details

The physical height of the grob can be get by `convertWidth(grobHeight(axis_grob), "mm")`.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

heightDetails.legend *Grob height for packed_legends*

Description

Grob height for packed_legends

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'legend'  
heightDetails(x)
```

Arguments

x A legend object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

heightDetails.legend_body
Grob height for legend_body

Description

Grob height for legend_body

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'legend_body'  
heightDetails(x)
```

Arguments

x A legend_body object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

```
heightDetails.packed_legends  
  Grob height for packed_legends
```

Description

Grob height for packed_legends

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'packed_legends'  
heightDetails(x)
```

Arguments

x A packed_legends object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

```
heightDetails.textbox Height for textbox grob
```

Description

Height for textbox grob

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'textbox'  
heightDetails(x)
```

Arguments

x The textbox grob returned by [textbox_grob](#).

Value

A [unit](#) object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

ht_global_opt *Global Options for Heatmaps*

Description

Global Options for Heatmaps

Usage

```
ht_global_opt(..., RESET = FALSE, READ.ONLY = NULL, LOCAL = FALSE, ADD = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|---|
| ... | Options. |
| RESET | Reset all the option values. |
| READ.ONLY | TRUE means only to return read-only values, FALSE means only to return non-read-only values, NULL means to return both. |
| LOCAL | Wwitch to local mode. |
| ADD | Add new options. |

Details

This function is deprecated. Please use [ht_opt](#) instead. However, changes by this function will also be synchronized in [ht_opt](#).

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

ht_opt *Global Options for Heatmaps*

Description

Global Options for Heatmaps

Usage

```
ht_opt(..., RESET = FALSE, READ.ONLY = NULL, LOCAL = FALSE, ADD = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| ... | Options, see 'Details' section. |
| RESET | Reset all the option values. |
| READ.ONLY | Please ignore this argument. |
| LOCAL | Please ignore this argument. |
| ADD | Please ignore this argument. |

Details

You can set some parameters for all heatmaps/annotations simultaneously by this global function. Please note you should put it before your heatmap code and reset all option values after drawing the heatmaps to get rid of affecting next heatmap.

There are following parameters to control all heatmaps:

heatmap_row_names_gp set row_names_gp in all [Heatmap](#).

heatmap_column_names_gp set column_names_gp in all [Heatmap](#).

heatmap_row_title_gp set row_title_gp in all [Heatmap](#).

heatmap_column_title_gp set column_title_gp in all [Heatmap](#).

heatmap_border set border in all [Heatmap](#).

Following parameters control the legends:

legend_title_gp set title_gp in all heatmap legends and annotation legends.

legend_title_position set title_position in all heatmap legends and annotation legends.

legend_labels_gp set labels_gp in all heatmap legends and annotation legends.

legend_grid_width set grid_width in all heatmap legends and annotation legends.

legend_grid_height set grid_height in all heatmap legends and annotation legends.

legend_border set border in all heatmap legends and annotation legends.

legend_gap Gap between legends. The value should be a vector of two units. One for gaps between vertical legends and one for the horizontal legends. If only one single unit is specified, the same gap set for the vertical and horizontal legends.

merge_legend whether merge heatmap and annotation legends.

Following parameters control heatmap annotations:

annotation_border border in all [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

simple_anno_size size for the simple annotation.

Following parameters control the space between heatmap components:

DENDROGRAM_PADDING space between dendrograms and heatmap body.

DIMNAME_PADDING space between row/column names and heatmap body.

TITLE_PADDING space between row/column titles and heatmap body. The value can have length of two which corresponds to the bottom and top padding.

COLUMN_ANN_PADDING space between column annotations and heatmap body.

ROW_ANN_PADDING space between row annotations and heatmap body.

HEATMAP_LEGEND_PADDING space between heatmap legends and heatmaps

ANNOTATION_LEGEND_PADDING space between annotation legends and heatmaps

Other parameters:

fast_hclust whether use [hclust](#) to speed up clustering?

show_parent_dend_line when heatmap is split, whether to add a dashed line to mark parent dendrogram and children dendrograms?

COLOR default colors for continuous color mapping.

You can get or set option values by the traditional way (like [options](#)) or by \$ operator:

```
# to get option values
ht_opt("heatmap_row_names_gp")
ht_opt$heatmap_row_names_gp

# to set option values
ht_opt("heatmap_row_names_gp" = gpar(fontsize = 8))
ht_opt$heatmap_row_names_gp = gpar(fontsize = 8)
```

Reset to the default values by `ht_opt(RESET = TRUE)`.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
ht_opt
```

ht_size

Calculate the width and height of the heatmaps

Description

Calculate the width and height of the heatmaps

Usage

```
ht_size(ht)
```

Arguments

ht A [Heatmap-class](#) or [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

Value

A list of two elements: width and height.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

`is_abs_unit`*Test Whether it is an Absolute Unit*

Description

Test Whether it is an Absolute Unit

Usage

```
is_abs_unit(u)
```

Arguments

`u` A `unit` object.

Details

Besides the normal absolute units (e.g. "mm", "inches"), this function simply assumes `grob` objects as absolute units.

For a complex unit which is combination of different units, it is absolute only if all units included are absolute units.

Value

A logical value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
is_abs_unit(unit(1, "mm"))
is_abs_unit(unit(1, "npc"))
is_abs_unit(grobWidth(textGrob("foo")))
is_abs_unit(unit(1, "mm") + unit(1, "npc"))
```

`Legend`*Make a Single Legend*

Description

Make a Single Legend

Usage

```
Legend(at, labels = at, col_fun, name = NULL, grob = NULL,
       break_dist = NULL, nrow = NULL, ncol = 1, by_row = FALSE,
       grid_height = unit(4, "mm"),
       grid_width = unit(4, "mm"), tick_length = unit(0.8, "mm"),
       gap = unit(2, "mm"), column_gap = gap, row_gap = unit(0, "mm"),
       labels_gp = gpar(fontsize = 10), labels_rot = 0,
       border = NULL, background = "#EEEEEE",
       type = "grid", graphics = NULL, legend_gp = gpar(),
       pch = 16, size = unit(2, "mm"),
       legend_height = NULL, legend_width = NULL,
       direction = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
       title = "", title_gp = gpar(fontsize = 10, fontface = "bold"),
       title_position = c("topleft", "topcenter", "leftcenter", "lefttop", "leftcenter-rot", "lefttop-rot"),
       title_gap = unit(2, "mm"))
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>at</code> | Breaks of the legend. The values can be either numeric or character. If it is not specified, the values of <code>labels</code> are taken as labels. |
| <code>labels</code> | Labels corresponding to <code>at</code> . If it is not specified, the values of <code>at</code> are taken as labels. |
| <code>col_fun</code> | A color mapping function which is used to make a continuous legend. Use colorRamp2 to generate the color mapping function. If <code>at</code> is missing, the breaks recorded in the color mapping function are used for <code>at</code> . |
| <code>name</code> | Name of the legend, internally used. |
| <code>grob</code> | The legend body can be specified by a pre-constructed grob object. |
| <code>break_dist</code> | A zooming factor to control relative distance of two neighbouring break values. The length of it should be <code>length(at) - 1</code> or a scalar. |
| <code>nrow</code> | For legend which is represented as grids, <code>nrow</code> controls number of rows of the grids if the grids are arranged into multiple rows. |
| <code>ncol</code> | Similar as <code>nrow</code> , <code>ncol</code> controls number of columns of the grids if the grids are arranged into multiple columns. Note at a same time only one of <code>nrow</code> and <code>ncol</code> can be specified. |
| <code>by_row</code> | Are the legend grids arranged by rows or by columns? |
| <code>grid_height</code> | The height of legend grid. It can also control the height of the continuous legend if it is horizontal. |
| <code>grid_width</code> | The width of legend grid. It can also control the width of the continuous legend if it is vertical. |
| <code>tick_length</code> | Length of the ticks on the continuous legends. Value should be a unit object. |
| <code>gap</code> | If legend grids are put into multiple rows or columns, this controls the gap between neighbouring rows or columns, measured as a unit object. |
| <code>column_gap</code> | The same as <code>gap</code> . |
| <code>row_gap</code> | Space between legend rows. |
| <code>labels_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for labels. |
| <code>labels_rot</code> | Text rotation for labels. It should only be used for horizontal continuous legend. |
| <code>border</code> | Color of legend grid borders. It also works for the ticks in the continuous legend. |

| | |
|----------------|--|
| background | Background colors for the grids. It is used when points and lines are the legend graphics. |
| type | Type of legends. The value can be one of grid, points, lines and boxplot. |
| graphics | Self-defined graphics for legends. The value should be a list of functions. Each function should accept four arguments: x and y: positions of the legend grid (center point), w and h: width and height of the legend grid. |
| legend_gp | Graphic parameters for the legend grids. You should control the filled color of the legend grids by <code>gpar(fill = ...)</code> . |
| pch | Type of points if points are used as legend. Note you can use single-letter as pch, e.g. <code>pch = 'A'</code> . There are three additional integers that are valid for pch: 26 and 27 for single diagonal lines and 28 for double diagonal lines. |
| size | Size of points. |
| legend_height | Height of the whole legend body. It is only used for vertical continuous legend. |
| legend_width | Width of the whole legend body. It is only used for horizontal continuous legend. |
| direction | Direction of the legend, vertical or horizontal? |
| title | Title of the legend. |
| title_gp | Graphic parameters of the title. |
| title_position | Position of title relative to the legend. <code>topleft</code> , <code>topcenter</code> , <code>leftcenter-rot</code> and <code>lefttop-rot</code> are only for vertical legend and <code>leftcenter</code> , <code>lefttop</code> are only for horizontal legend. |
| title_gap | Gap between title and the legend body. |

Details

Most of the argument can also be set in `heatmap_legend_param` argument in [Heatmap](#) or `annotation_legend_param` argument in [HeatmapAnnotation](#) to configure legend styles for heatmap and annotations.

Value

A [Legends-class](#) object.

See Also

[packLegend](#) packs multiple legends into one [Legends-class](#) object.

See examples of configuring legends: <https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/legends.html>

Examples

```
lgd = Legend(labels = month.name[1:6], title = "foo", legend_gp = gpar(fill = 1:6))
draw(lgd, test = "add labels and title")

require(circlize)
col_fun = colorRamp2(c(0, 0.5, 1), c("blue", "white", "red"))
lgd = Legend(col_fun = col_fun, title = "foo")
draw(lgd, test = "only col_fun")

col_fun = colorRamp2(c(0, 0.5, 1), c("blue", "white", "red"))
lgd = Legend(col_fun = col_fun, title = "foo", at = c(0, 0.1, 0.15, 0.5, 0.9, 0.95, 1))
draw(lgd, test = "unequal interval breaks")
```

Legends

Constructor method for Legends class

Description

Constructor method for Legends class

Usage

```
Legends(...)
```

Arguments

```
... arguments.
```

Details

There is no public constructor method for the [Legends-class](#).

Value

No value is returned.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

Legends-class

The Class for Legends

Description

The Class for Legends

Details

This is a very simple class for legends that it only has one slot which is the real [grob](#) of the legends.
Construct a single legend by [Legend](#) and a group of legends by [packLegend](#).

Examples

```
lgd = Legend(at = 1:4)  
lgd  
lgd@grob
```

`length.HeatmapAnnotation`
Number of Annotations

Description

Number of Annotations

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'  
length(x)
```

Arguments

x A [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

`length.HeatmapList` *Length of the HeatmapList object*

Description

Length of the HeatmapList object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapList'  
length(x)
```

Arguments

x A [HeatmapList-class](#) object

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| list_components | <i>List All Heatmap Components</i> |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|

Description

List All Heatmap Components

Usage

```
list_components(pattern = NULL)
```

Arguments

pattern A regular expression.

Value

A vector of viewport names.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|----------------|--|
| list_to_matrix | <i>Convert a List of Sets to a Binary Matrix</i> |
|----------------|--|

Description

Convert a List of Sets to a Binary Matrix

Usage

```
list_to_matrix(lt, universal_set = NULL)
```

Arguments

lt A list of vectors.
universal_set The universal set.

Details

It converts the list which have m sets to a binary matrix with n rows and m columns where n is the size of universal set.

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
lt = list(a = sample(letters, 5),
         b = sample(letters, 10),
         c = sample(letters, 15))
list_to_matrix(lt)
list_to_matrix(lt, universal_set = letters)
```

make_column_cluster-Heatmap-method

Make Cluster on Columns

Description

Make Cluster on Columns

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
make_column_cluster(object)
```

Arguments

object A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Details

The function will fill or adjust `column_dend_list`, `column_order_list`, `column_title` and `matrix_param` slots.

If order is defined, no clustering will be applied.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|---------------|---|
| make_comb_mat | <i>Make a Combination Matrix for UpSet Plot</i> |
|---------------|---|

Description

Make a Combination Matrix for UpSet Plot

Usage

```
make_comb_mat(..., mode = c("distinct", "intersect", "union"),
  top_n_sets = Inf, min_set_size = -Inf,
  universal_set = NULL, complement_size = NULL,
  value_fun = NULL, set_on_rows = TRUE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| ... | The input sets. If it is represented as a single variable, it should be a matrix/data frame or a list. If it is multiple variables, it should be name-value pairs, see Input section for explanation. |
| mode | The mode for forming the combination set, see Mode section. |
| top_n_sets | Number of sets with largest size. |
| min_set_size | This minimal set size that is used for generating the combination matrix. |
| universal_set | The universal set. If it is set, the size of the complement set of all sets is also calculated. If it is specified, complement_size is ignored. |
| complement_size | The size for the complement of all sets. If it is specified, the combination set name will be like "00...". |
| value_fun | For each combination set, how to calculate the size? If it is a scalar set, the length of the vector is the size of the set, while if it is a region-based set, (i.e. GRanges or IRanges object), the sum of widths of regions in the set is calculated as the size of the set. |
| set_on_rows | Used internally. |

Value

A matrix also in a class of comb_mat.

Following functions can be applied to it: [set_name](#), [comb_name](#), [set_size](#), [comb_size](#), [comb_degree](#), [extract_comb](#) and [t.comb_mat](#).

Input

To represent multiple sets, the variable can be represented as:

1. A list of sets where each set is a vector, e.g.:

```
list(set1 = c("a", "b", "c"),
  set2 = c("b", "c", "d", "e"),
  ...)
```

2. A binary matrix/data frame where rows are elements and columns are sets, e.g.:


```

      a b c
h 1 1 1
t 1 0 1
j 1 0 0
u 1 0 1
w 1 0 0
...

```

If the variable is a data frame, the binary columns (only contain 0 and 1) and the logical columns are only kept.

The set can be genomic regions, then it can only be represented as a list of GRanges objects.

Mode

E.g. for three sets (A, B, C), the UpSet approach splits the combination of selecting elements in the set or not in the set and calculates the sizes of the combination sets. For three sets, all possible combinations are:

```

A B C
1 1 1
1 1 0
1 0 1
0 1 1
1 0 0
0 1 0
0 0 1

```

A value of 1 means to select that set and 0 means not to select that set. E.g., "1 1 0" means to select set A, B while not set C. Note there is no "0 0 0", because the background size is not of interest here. With the code of selecting and not selecting the sets, next we need to define how to calculate the size of that combination set. There are three modes:

1. distinct mode: 1 means in that set and 0 means not in that set, then "1 1 0" means a set of elements also in set A and B, while not in C (i.e. `setdiff(intersect(A, B), C)`). Under this mode, the seven combination sets are the seven partitions in the Venn diagram and they are mutually exclusive.
2. intersect mode: 1 means in that set and 0 is not taken into account, then, "1 1 0" means a set of elements in set A and B, and they can also in C or not in C (i.e. `intersect(A, B)`). Under this mode, the seven combination sets can overlap.
3. union mode: 1 means in that set and 0 is not taken into account. When there are multiple 1, the relationship is OR. Then, "1 1 0" means a set of elements in set A or B, and they can also in C or not in C (i.e. `union(A, B)`). Under this mode, the seven combination sets can overlap.

Examples

```

set.seed(123)
lt = list(a = sample(letters, 10),
          b = sample(letters, 15),
          c = sample(letters, 20))
m = make_comb_mat(lt)

mat = list_to_matrix(lt)
mat

```

```
m = make_comb_mat(mat)

## Not run:
require(circlize)
require(GenomicRanges)
lt = lapply(1:4, function(i) generateRandomBed())
lt = lapply(lt, function(df) GRanges(seqnames = df[, 1],
  ranges = IRanges(df[, 2], df[, 3])))
names(lt) = letters[1:4]
m = make_comb_mat(lt)

## End(Not run)
```

make_layout-dispatch *Method dispatch page for make_layout*

Description

Method dispatch page for make_layout.

Dispatch

make_layout can be dispatched on following classes:

- [make_layout, Heatmap-method, Heatmap-class](#) class method
- [make_layout, HeatmapList-method, HeatmapList-class](#) class method

Examples

```
# no example
NULL
```

make_layout-Heatmap-method
Make the Layout of a Single Heatmap

Description

Make the Layout of a Single Heatmap

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
make_layout(object)
```

Arguments

object A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Details

The layout of the single heatmap will be established by setting the size of each heatmap component. Also how to make graphics for heatmap components will be recorded by saving as functions.

Whether to apply row clustering or column clustering affects the layout, so clustering should be applied first by [prepare, Heatmap-method](#) before making the layout.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

make_layout-HeatmapList-method

Make Layout for the Heatmap List

Description

Make Layout for the Heatmap List

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'
make_layout(object,

  row_title = character(0),
  row_title_side = c("left", "right"),
  row_title_gp = gpar(fontsize = 14),
  column_title = character(0),
  column_title_side = c("top", "bottom"),
  column_title_gp = gpar(fontsize = 14),

  heatmap_legend_side = c("right", "left", "bottom", "top"),
  merge_legends = FALSE,
  show_heatmap_legend = TRUE,
  heatmap_legend_list = list(),
  annotation_legend_side = c("right", "left", "bottom", "top"),
  show_annotation_legend = TRUE,
  annotation_legend_list = list(),
  align_heatmap_legend = NULL,
  align_annotation_legend = NULL,
  legend_grouping = c("adjusted", "original"),
```

```
ht_gap = unit(2, "mm"),

main_heatmap = which(sapply(object@ht_list, inherits, "Heatmap"))[1],
padding = GLOBAL_PADDING,

auto_adjust = TRUE,
row_dend_side = c("original", "left", "right"),
row_sub_title_side = c("original", "left", "right"),
column_dend_side = c("original", "top", "bottom"),
column_sub_title_side = c("original", "top", "bottom"),

row_gap = NULL,
cluster_rows = NULL,
cluster_row_slices = NULL,
clustering_distance_rows = NULL,
clustering_method_rows = NULL,
row_dend_width = NULL,
show_row_dend = NULL,
row_dend_reorder = NULL,
row_dend_gp = NULL,
row_order = NULL,
row_km = NULL,
row_km_repeats = NULL,
row_split = NULL,
height = NULL,
heatmap_height = NULL,

column_gap = NULL,
cluster_columns = NULL,
cluster_column_slices = NULL,
clustering_distance_columns = NULL,
clustering_method_columns = NULL,
column_dend_width = NULL,
show_column_dend = NULL,
column_dend_reorder = NULL,
column_dend_gp = NULL,
column_order = NULL,
column_km = NULL,
column_km_repeats = NULL,
column_split = NULL,
width = NULL,
heatmap_width = NULL,

use_raster = NULL,
raster_device = NULL,
raster_quality = NULL,
raster_device_param = NULL,
raster_resize = NULL)
```

Arguments

object A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| row_title | Title on the row. |
| row_title_side | Will the title be put on the left or right of the heatmap list? |
| row_title_gp | Graphic parameters for the row title. |
| column_title | Title on the column. |
| column_title_side | Will the title be put on the top or bottom of the heatmap? |
| column_title_gp | Graphic parameters for the column title. |
| heatmap_legend_side | Side of the heatmap legends. |
| merge_legends | Whether to put heatmap legends and annotation legends together. By default they are put in different viewports. |
| show_heatmap_legend | Whether show heatmap legends. |
| heatmap_legend_list | A list of self-defined legends, should be wrapped into a list of <code>grob</code> objects. Normally they are constructed by <code>Legend</code> . |
| annotation_legend_side | Side of annotation legends. |
| show_annotation_legend | Whether show annotation legends. |
| annotation_legend_list | A list of self-defined legends, should be wrapped into a list of <code>grob</code> objects. Normally they are constructed by <code>Legend</code> . |
| align_heatmap_legend | How to align the legends to heatmap. Possible values are "heatmap_center", "heatmap_top" and "global_center". If the value is NULL, it automatically picks the proper value from the three options. |
| align_annotation_legend | How to align the legends to heatmap. Possible values are "heatmap_center", "heatmap_top" and "global_center". |
| legend_grouping | How the legends are grouped. Values should be "adjusted" or "original". |
| ht_gap | Gap between heatmaps, should be a <code>unit</code> object. It can be a vector of length 1 or the number of heatmaps/annotations. |
| main_heatmap | Name or index for the main heatmap. |
| padding | Padding of the whole plot. The four values correspond to the bottom, left, top and right paddings. |
| auto_adjust | whether apply automatic adjustment? The auto-adjustment includes turning off dendrograms, titles and row/columns for non-main heatmaps. |
| row_dend_side | If auto-adjustment is on, to put the row dendrograms of the main heatmap to the most left side of the heatmap list or the most right side? |
| row_sub_title_side | There can be sub titles generated by the splitting of heatmaps. Similar setting as <code>row_dend_side</code> . |
| column_dend_side | Similar setting as <code>row_dend_side</code> . |

`column_sub_title_side` Similar setting as `row_sub_title_side`.
`row_gap` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`cluster_rows` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`cluster_row_slices` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`clustering_distance_rows` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`clustering_method_rows` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.same setting as in [Heatmap](#), if it is specified, `clustering_method_rows` in main heatmap is ignored.
`row_dend_width` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`show_row_dend` same Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`row_dend_reorder` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`row_dend_gp` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`row_order` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`row_km` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`row_km_repeats` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`row_split` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`height` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`heatmap_height` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`column_gap` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`cluster_columns` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`cluster_column_slices` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`clustering_distance_columns` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`clustering_method_columns` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`column_dend_width` column Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`show_column_dend` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`column_dend_reorder` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`column_dend_gp` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`column_order` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`column_km` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`column_km_repeats` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`column_split` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
`width` Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.

heatmap_width Overwrite the corresponding setting in the main heatmap.
use_raster Overwrite the corresponding setting in every heatmap.
raster_device Overwrite the corresponding setting in every heatmap.
raster_quality Overwrite the corresponding setting in every heatmap.
raster_device_param Overwrite the corresponding setting in every heatmap.
raster_resize Overwrite the corresponding setting in every heatmap.

Details

It sets the size of each component of the heatmap list and adjusts graphic parameters for each heatmap if necessary.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

A [HeatmapList-class](#) object in which settings for all heatmap are adjusted.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

make_row_cluster-Heatmap-method
Make Cluster on Rows

Description

Make Cluster on Rows

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'  
make_row_cluster(object)
```

Arguments

object A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Details

The function will fill or adjust row_dend_list, row_order_list, row_title and matrix_param slots.

If order is defined, no clustering will be applied.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

map_to_colors-ColorMapping-method

Map Values to Colors

Description

Map Values to Colors

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'ColorMapping'
map_to_colors(object, x)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--|
| object | A ColorMapping-class object. |
| x | Input values. |

Details

It maps a vector of values to a vector of colors.

This function provides a uniform way for discrete and continuous color mapping.

Value

A vector of colors.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
cm = ColorMapping(colors = c("A" = "red", "B" = "black"))
map_to_colors(cm, sample(c("A", "B"), 10, replace = TRUE))
require(circlize)
col_fun = colorRamp2(c(0, 1), c("white", "red"))
cm = ColorMapping(col_fun = col_fun)
map_to_colors(cm, runif(10))
```

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| max_text_height | <i>Maximum Height of Text</i> |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|

Description

Maximum Height of Text

Usage

```
max_text_height(text, gp = gpar(), rot = 0)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------|-------------------------------|
| text | A vector of text. |
| gp | Graphic parameters for text. |
| rot | Rotation of the text, scalar. |

Details

It simply calculates maximum height of a list of [textGrob](#) objects.

Note it ignores the text rotation.

Value

A [unit](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

[max_text_width](#) calculates the maximum width of a text vector.

Examples

```
x = c("a", "b\nb", "c\nc\nc")
max_text_height(x, gp = gpar(fontsize = 10))
```

| | |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| max_text_width | <i>Maximum Width of Text</i> |
|----------------|------------------------------|

Description

Maximum Width of Text

Usage

```
max_text_width(text, gp = gpar(), rot = 0)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------|-------------------------------|
| text | A vector of text. |
| gp | Graphic parameters for text. |
| rot | Rotation of the text, scalar. |

Details

It simply calculates maximum width of a list of [textGrob](#) objects.

Note it ignores the text rotation.

Value

A [unit](#) object which is in "mm".

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

[max_text_height](#) calculates the maximum height of a text vector.

Examples

```
x = c("a", "bb", "ccc")
max_text_width(x, gp = gpar(fontsize = 10))
```

| | |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| merge_dendrogram | <i>Merge Dendrograms</i> |
|------------------|--------------------------|

Description

Merge Dendrograms

Usage

```
merge_dendrogram(x, y, only_parent = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|---|
| x | The parent dendrogram. |
| y | The children dendrograms. They are connected to the leaves of the parent dendrogram. So the length of y should be as same as the number of leaves of the parent dendrogram. |
| only_parent | Whether only returns the parent dendrogram where the height and node positions have been adjusted by children dendrograms. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

Do not retrieve the order of the merged dendrogram. It is not reliable.

Examples

```
m1 = matrix(rnorm(100), nr = 10)
m2 = matrix(rnorm(80), nr = 8)
m3 = matrix(rnorm(50), nr = 5)
dend1 = as.dendrogram(hclust(dist(m1)))
dend2 = as.dendrogram(hclust(dist(m2)))
dend3 = as.dendrogram(hclust(dist(m3)))
dend_p = as.dendrogram(hclust(dist(rbind(colMeans(m1), colMeans(m2), colMeans(m3)))))
dend_m = merge_dendrogram(dend_p, list(dend1, dend2, dend3))
grid.dendrogram(dend_m, test = TRUE)

dend_m = merge_dendrogram(dend_p, list(dend1, dend2, dend3), only_parent = TRUE)
grid.dendrogram(dend_m, test = TRUE)

require(dendextend)
dend1 = color_branches(dend1, k = 1, col = "red")
dend2 = color_branches(dend2, k = 1, col = "blue")
dend3 = color_branches(dend3, k = 1, col = "green")
dend_p = color_branches(dend_p, k = 1, col = "orange")
dend_m = merge_dendrogram(dend_p, list(dend1, dend2, dend3))
grid.dendrogram(dend_m, test = TRUE)
```

names.HeatmapAnnotation

Annotation Names

Description

Annotation Names

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'  
names(x)
```

Arguments

x A [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object.

Examples

```
ha = HeatmapAnnotation(foo = 1:10, bar = anno_points(10:1))  
names(ha)
```

names.HeatmapList

Names of the heatmaps/annotations

Description

Names of the heatmaps/annotations

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapList'  
names(x)
```

Arguments

x A [HeatmapList-class](#) object

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

namesAssign.HeatmapAnnotation
Assign Annotation Names

Description

Assign Annotation Names

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'  
names(x) <- value
```

Arguments

x A [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object.
value A vector of new names.

Examples

```
ha = HeatmapAnnotation(foo = 1:10, bar = anno_points(10:1))  
names(ha) = c("A", "B")  
names(ha)
```

ncol.Heatmap *Number of Columns in the Heatmap*

Description

Number of Columns in the Heatmap

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'Heatmap'  
ncol(x)
```

Arguments

x A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

nobs.AnnotationFunction

Number of Observations

Description

Number of Observations

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'AnnotationFunction'  
nobs(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object The [AnnotationFunction-class](#) object.
... Other arguments.

Details

returns NA.

Examples

```
anno = anno_points(1:10)  
nobs(anno)
```

nobs.HeatmapAnnotation

Number of Observations

Description

Number of Observations

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'  
nobs(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object The [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object.
... other arguments.

Value

If there is no nobs information for any of its [SingleAnnotation-class](#) object, it returns NA.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

nobs.SingleAnnotation *Number of Observations*

Description

Number of Observations

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'SingleAnnotation'
nobs(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object The [SingleAnnotation-class](#) object.
 ... Other arguments.

Details

It returns the n slot of the annotaton function. If it does not exist, it returns NA.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

normalize_comb_mat *Normalize a list of combination matrice*

Description

Normalize a list of combination matrice

Usage

```
normalize_comb_mat(..., full_comb_sets = FALSE, complement_set = FALSE)
```

Arguments

... Combination matrices.
 full_comb_sets Whether the combination matrices contain the full sets of combination sets?
 complement_set Whether the combination matrices also contain the complement set?

Details

It normalizes a list of combination matrices to make them have same number and order of sets and combination sets.

The sets (by `set_name`) from all combination matrices should be the same.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

```
normalize_genomic_signals_to_bins
```

Overlap genomic signals to the genomic bins

Description

Overlap genomic signals to the genomic bins

Usage

```
normalize_genomic_signals_to_bins(gr, value, value_column = NULL, method = "weighted",
  empty_value = NA, window = GHEATMAP_ENV$chr_window)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code>gr</code> | A GRanges object. |
| <code>value</code> | The corresponding signals corresponding to <code>gr</code> . |
| <code>value_column</code> | If <code>value</code> is not set and the values are in the meta-columns in <code>gr</code> , you can specify the column indices for these value columns, better to use name indices. |
| <code>method</code> | One of "weighted", "w0" and "absolute". For the three different methods, please refer to https://bioconductor.org/packages/release/bioc/vignettes/EnrichedHeatmap/inst/doc/EnrichedHeatmap.html#toc_7 . |
| <code>empty_value</code> | The value for the bins where no signal is overlapped. |
| <code>window</code> | The genomic bins generated from bin_genome . |

Details

The genomic bins should be generated by [bin_genome](#) in advance. The genomic bins are saved internally, so that multiple uses of [bin_genome](#) ensure they all return the matrices with the same rows.

It supports following values.

- When neither `value` nor `value_column` is set, it simply overlap `gr` to the genomic bins and returns a one-column logical matrix which represents whether the current genomic bin overlaps to any signal.
- When the signals are numeric, `value` can be a numeric vector or a matrix, or `value_column` can contain multiple columns. The function returns a numeric matrix where the values are properly averaged depending on what method was used.
- When the signals are character, `value` can only be a vector or `value_column` can only contain one single column. The function returns a one-column character matrix.

Value

A matrix with the same row as the genomic bins.

Examples

```
## Not run:
require(circlize)
require(GenomicRanges)

chr_window = bin_genome("hg19")

#### the first is a numeric matrix #####
bed1 = generateRandomBed(nr = 1000, nc = 10)
gr1 = GRanges(seqnames = bed1[, 1], ranges = IRanges(bed1[, 2], bed1[, 3]))

num_mat = normalize_genomic_signals_to_bins(gr1, bed1[, -(1:3)])

#### the second is a character matrix #####
bed_list = lapply(1:10, function(i) {
  generateRandomBed(nr = 1000, nc = 1,
    fun = function(n) sample(c("gain", "loss"), n, replace = TRUE))
})
char_mat = NULL
for(i in 1:10) {
  bed = bed_list[[i]]
  bed = bed[sample(nrow(bed), 20), , drop = FALSE]
  gr_cnv = GRanges(seqnames = bed[, 1], ranges = IRanges(bed[, 2], bed[, 3]))

  char_mat = cbind(char_mat, normalize_genomic_signals_to_bins(gr_cnv, bed[, 4]))
}

#### two numeric columns #####
bed2 = generateRandomBed(nr = 100, nc = 2)
gr2 = GRanges(seqnames = bed2[, 1], ranges = IRanges(bed2[, 2], bed2[, 3]))

v = normalize_genomic_signals_to_bins(gr2, bed2[, 4:5])

#### a list of genes need to be highlighted
bed3 = generateRandomBed(nr = 40, nc = 0)
gr3 = GRanges(seqnames = bed3[, 1], ranges = IRanges(bed3[, 2], bed3[, 2]))
gr3$gene = paste0("gene_", 1:length(gr3))

mtch = as.matrix(findOverlaps(chr_window, gr3))
at = mtch[, 1]
labels = mcols(gr3)[mtch[, 2], 1]

#### order of the chromosomes #####
chr = as.vector(seqnames(chr_window))
chr_level = paste0("chr", c(1:22, "X", "Y"))
chr = factor(chr, levels = chr_level)

#### make the heatmap #####
subgroup = rep(c("A", "B"), each = 5)

ht_opt$TITLE_PADDING = unit(c(4, 4), "points")
ht_list = Heatmap(num_mat, name = "mat", col = colorRamp2(c(-1, 0, 1), c("green", "white", "red")),
```

```

    row_split = chr, cluster_rows = FALSE, show_column_dend = FALSE,
    column_split = subgroup, cluster_column_slices = FALSE,
    column_title = "numeric matrix",
    top_annotation = HeatmapAnnotation(subgroup = subgroup, annotation_name_side = "left"),
    row_title_rot = 0, row_title_gp = gpar(fontsize = 10), border = TRUE,
    row_gap = unit(0, "points")) +
Heatmap(char_mat, name = "CNV", col = c("gain" = "red", "loss" = "blue"),
    border = TRUE, column_title = "character matrix") +
rowAnnotation(label = anno_mark(at = at, labels = labels)) +
rowAnnotation(pt = anno_points(v, gp = gpar(col = 4:5), pch = c(1, 16)),
    width = unit(2, "cm")) +
rowAnnotation(bar = anno_barplot(v[, 1], gp = gpar(col = ifelse(v[, 1] > 0, 2, 3))),
    width = unit(2, "cm"))
draw(ht_list, merge_legend = TRUE)

##### or horizontally ###
ht_list = Heatmap(t(num_mat), name = "mat", col = colorRamp2(c(-1, 0, 1), c("green", "white", "red")),
    column_split = chr, cluster_columns = FALSE, show_row_dend = FALSE,
    row_split = subgroup, cluster_row_slices = FALSE,
    row_title = "numeric matrix",
    left_annotation = rowAnnotation(subgroup = subgroup, show_annotation_name = FALSE,
    annotation_legend_param = list(
    subgroup = list(direction = "horizontal", title_position = "lefttop", nrow = 1))),
    column_title_gp = gpar(fontsize = 10), border = TRUE,
    column_gap = unit(0, "points"),
    column_title = ifelse(seq_along(chr_level) %% 2 == 0, paste0("\n", chr_level), paste0(chr_level, "\n")),
    heatmap_legend_param = list(direction = "horizontal", title_position = "lefttop")) %v%
Heatmap(t(char_mat), name = "CNV", col = c("gain" = "red", "loss" = "blue"),
    border = TRUE, row_title = "character matrix",
    heatmap_legend_param = list(direction = "horizontal", title_position = "lefttop", nrow = 1)) %v%
HeatmapAnnotation(label = anno_mark(at = at, labels = labels, side = "bottom")) %v%
HeatmapAnnotation(pt = anno_points(v, gp = gpar(col = 4:5), pch = c(1, 16)),
    annotation_name_side = "left", height = unit(2, "cm")) %v%
HeatmapAnnotation(bar = anno_barplot(v[, 1], gp = gpar(col = ifelse(v[, 1] > 0, 2, 3))),
    annotation_name_side = "left", height = unit(2, "cm"))
draw(ht_list, heatmap_legend_side = "bottom", merge_legend = TRUE)

## End(Not run)

```

nrow.Heatmap

Number of Rows in the Heatmap

Description

Number of Rows in the Heatmap

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'Heatmap'
nrow(x)
```

Arguments

x A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

oncoPrint*Make oncoPrint*

Description

Make oncoPrint

Usage

```
oncoPrint(mat, name,
  get_type = default_get_type,
  alter_fun,
  alter_fun_is_vectorized = NULL,
  col = NULL,

  top_annotation = HeatmapAnnotation(cbar = anno_oncoprint_barplot()),
  right_annotation = rowAnnotation(rbar = anno_oncoprint_barplot()),
  left_annotation = NULL,
  bottom_annotation = NULL,

  show_pct = TRUE,
  pct_gp = gpar(fontsize = 10),
  pct_digits = 0,
  pct_side = "left",
  pct_include = NULL,

  row_labels = NULL,
  show_row_names = TRUE,
  row_names_side = "right",
  row_names_gp = pct_gp,
  row_split = NULL,

  column_labels = NULL,
  column_names_gp = gpar(fontsize = 10),
  column_split = NULL,

  row_order = NULL,
  column_order = NULL,
  cluster_rows = FALSE,
  cluster_columns = FALSE,

  remove_empty_columns = FALSE,
  remove_empty_rows = FALSE,
  show_column_names = FALSE,
  heatmap_legend_param = NULL,
  ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| mat | The value should be a character matrix which encodes multiple alterations or a list of matrices for which every matrix contains binary value representing whether the alteration is present or absent. When the value is a list, the names of the list represent alteration types. You can use unify_mat_list to make all matrix having same row names and column names. |
| name | Name of the oncoPrint. Not necessary to specify. |
| get_type | If different alterations are encoded in the matrix as complex strings, this self-defined function determines how to extract them. It only works when mat is a matrix. The default value is default_get_type . |
| alter_fun | A single function or a list of functions which defines how to add graphics for different alterations. You can use alter_graphic to automatically generate for rectangles and points. |
| alter_fun_is_vectorized | Whether alter_fun is implemented vectorized. Internally the function will guess. |
| col | A vector of color for which names correspond to alteration types. |
| top_annotation | Annotation put on top of the oncoPrint. By default it is barplot which shows the number of genes with a certain alteration in each sample. |
| right_annotation | Annotation put on the right of the oncoPrint. By default it is barplot which shows the number of samples with a certain alteration in each gene. |
| left_annotation | Annotation put on the left of the oncoPrint. |
| bottom_annotation | Annotation put at the bottom of the oncoPrint. |
| show_pct | whether show percent values on the left of the oncoprint? |
| pct_gp | Graphic parameters for percent values |
| pct_digits | Digits for the percent values. |
| pct_side | Side of the percent values to the oncoPrint. This argument is currently disabled. |
| pct_include | Alteration types that are included for the calculation of percent values. |
| row_labels | Labels as the row names of the oncoPrint. |
| show_row_names | Whether show row names? |
| row_names_side | Side of the row names to the oncoPrint. This argument is currently disabled. |
| row_names_gp | Graphic parameters for the row names. |
| row_split | Pass to Heatmap . |
| column_labels | Pass to Heatmap . |
| column_names_gp | Pass to Heatmap . |
| column_split | Pass to Heatmap . |
| row_order | Order of rows. By default rows are sorted by the number of occurrence of the alterations. |
| cluster_rows | If it is set, it must be a dendrogram/hclust object. |
| cluster_columns | If it is set, it must be a dendrogram/hclust object. |

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| column_order | Order of columns. By default the columns are sorted to show the mutual exclusivity of alterations. |
| remove_empty_columns | If there is no alteration in some samples, whether remove them on the oncoPrint? |
| remove_empty_rows | If there is no alteration in some samples, whether remove them on the oncoPrint? |
| show_column_names | Whether show column names? |
| heatmap_legend_param | pass to Heatmap . |
| ... | Pass to Heatmap . |

Details

The 'memo sort' method is from <https://gist.github.com/armish/564a65ab874a770e2c26>. Thanks to B. Arman Aksoy for contributing the code.

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/oncoprint.html> gives details for configuring a oncoPrint.

Value

A [Heatmap-class](#) object which means you can add other heatmaps or annotations to it.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| order.comb_mat | <i>Order of the Combination Sets</i> |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|

Description

Order of the Combination Sets

Usage

```
order.comb_mat(m, decreasing = TRUE, on = "comb_set")
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| m | A combination matrix returned by make_comb_mat . |
| on | On sets or on combination sets? |
| decreasing | Whether the ordering is applied decreasingly. |

Details

It first sorts by the degree of the combination sets then by the combination matrix.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|------------|---------------------|
| packLegend | <i>Pack Legends</i> |
|------------|---------------------|

Description

Pack Legends

Usage

```
packLegend(..., gap = unit(4, "mm"), row_gap = unit(4, "mm"), column_gap = unit(4, "mm"),
  direction = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  max_width = NULL, max_height = NULL, list = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| ... | A list of objects returned by Legend . |
| gap | Gap between two neighbouring legends. The value is a unit object with length of one. It is the same as <code>row_gap</code> if the direction is vertical and the same as <code>column_gap</code> if the direction is horizontal. |
| row_gap | Horizontal gaps between legends. |
| column_gap | Vertical gaps between legends. |
| direction | The direction to arrange legends. |
| max_width | The maximal width of the total packed legends. It only works for horizontal arrangement. If the total width of the legends exceeds it, the legends will be arranged into multiple rows. |
| max_height | Similar as <code>max_width</code> , but for the vertical arrangement of legends. |
| list | The list of legends can be specified as a list. |

Value

A [Legends-class](#) object.

See Also

<https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/legends.html#a-list-of-legends>

Examples

```
require(circlize)
col_fun = colorRamp2(c(0, 0.5, 1), c("blue", "white", "red"))
lgd1 = Legend(at = 1:6, legend_gp = gpar(fill = 1:6), title = "legend1")
lgd2 = Legend(col_fun = col_fun, title = "legend2", at = c(0, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 1))
pd = packLegend(lgd1, lgd2)
draw(pd, test = "two legends")
pd = packLegend(lgd1, lgd2, direction = "horizontal")
draw(pd, test = "two legends packed horizontally")
```

pheatmap

*Translate pheatmap::pheatmap to ComplexHeatmap::Heatmap***Description**

Translate pheatmap::pheatmap to ComplexHeatmap::Heatmap

Usage

```
pheatmap(mat,
  color = colorRampPalette(rev(brewer.pal(n = 7, name = "RdYlBu")))(100),
  kmeans_k = NA,
  breaks = NA,
  border_color = ifelse(nrow(mat) < 100 & ncol(mat) < 100, "grey60", NA),
  cellwidth = NA,
  cellheight = NA,
  scale = "none",
  cluster_rows = TRUE,
  cluster_cols = TRUE,
  clustering_distance_rows = "euclidean",
  clustering_distance_cols = "euclidean",
  clustering_method = "complete",
  clustering_callback = NA,
  cutree_rows = NA,
  cutree_cols = NA,
  treeheight_row = ifelse(class(cluster_rows) == "hclust" || cluster_rows, 50, 0),
  treeheight_col = ifelse(class(cluster_cols) == "hclust" || cluster_cols, 50, 0),
  legend = TRUE,
  legend_breaks = NA,
  legend_labels = NA,
  annotation_row = NA,
  annotation_col = NA,
  annotation = NA,
  annotation_colors = NA,
  annotation_legend = TRUE,
  annotation_names_row = TRUE,
  annotation_names_col = TRUE,
  drop_levels = TRUE,
  show_rownames = TRUE,
  show_colnames = TRUE,
  main = NA,
```

```

fontsize = 10,
fontsize_row = fontsize,
fontsize_col = fontsize,
angle_col = c("270", "0", "45", "90", "315"),
display_numbers = FALSE,
number_format = "%.2f",
number_color = "grey30",
fontsize_number = 0.8 * fontsize,
gaps_row = NULL,
gaps_col = NULL,
labels_row = NULL,
labels_col = NULL,
filename = NA,
width = NA,
height = NA,
silent = FALSE,
na_col = "#DDDDDD",
name = NULL,

# other graphic parameters for fonts
fontfamily = "",
fontfamily_row = fontfamily,
fontfamily_col = fontfamily,
fontface = 1,
fontface_row = fontface,
fontface_col = fontface,

# argument specific for Heatmap()
heatmap_legend_param = list(),
...,
run_draw = FALSE)

```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| mat | The input matrix. |
| color | The same as in pheatmap . Here you don't necessarily need to generate a long color vector. The discrete colors sent to colorRampPalette are also OK here. E.g. <code>colorRampPalette(rev(brewer.pal(n = 7, name = "RdYlBu")))(100)</code> can be simply replaced as <code>rev(brewer.pal(n = 7, name = "RdYlBu"))</code> . |
| kmeans_k | The same as in pheatmap . |
| breaks | The same as in pheatmap . |
| border_color | The same as in pheatmap . |
| cellwidth | The same as in pheatmap . |
| cellheight | The same as in pheatmap . |
| scale | The same as in pheatmap . |
| cluster_rows | The same as in pheatmap . |
| cluster_cols | The same as in pheatmap . |
| clustering_distance_rows | The same as in pheatmap . |

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| clustering_distance_cols | The same as in pheatmap . |
| clustering_method | The same as in pheatmap . |
| clustering_callback | The same as in pheatmap . |
| cutree_rows | The same as in pheatmap . |
| cutree_cols | The same as in pheatmap . |
| treeheight_row | The same as in pheatmap . |
| treeheight_col | The same as in pheatmap . |
| legend | The same as in pheatmap . |
| legend_breaks | The same as in pheatmap . |
| legend_labels | The same as in pheatmap . |
| annotation_row | The same as in pheatmap . |
| annotation_col | The same as in pheatmap . |
| annotation | The same as in pheatmap . |
| annotation_colors | The same as in pheatmap . |
| annotation_legend | The same as in pheatmap . |
| annotation_names_row | The same as in pheatmap . |
| annotation_names_col | The same as in pheatmap . |
| drop_levels | Enforced to be TRUE. |
| show_rownames | The same as in pheatmap . |
| show_colnames | The same as in pheatmap . |
| main | The same as in pheatmap . |
| fontsize | The same as in pheatmap . |
| fontsize_row | The same as in pheatmap . |
| fontsize_col | The same as in pheatmap . |
| angle_col | The same as in pheatmap . |
| display_numbers | The same as in pheatmap . |
| number_format | The same as in pheatmap . |
| number_color | The same as in pheatmap . |
| fontsize_number | The same as in pheatmap . |
| gaps_row | The same as in pheatmap . |
| gaps_col | The same as in pheatmap . |
| labels_row | The same as in pheatmap . |
| labels_col | The same as in pheatmap . |
| filename | Not supported. |

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| width | Not supported. |
| height | Not supported. |
| silent | Not supported. |
| na_col | The same as in pheatmap . |
| name | Name of the heatmap. This argument is passed to Heatmap . |
| fontfamily | Font family for row and column names. |
| fontfamily_row | Font family for row names. |
| fontfamily_col | Font family for column names. |
| fontface | Font face for row and column names. |
| fontface_row | Font face for row names. |
| fontface_col | Font face for column names. |
| heatmap_legend_param | Pass to Heatmap . |
| ... | Other arguments passed to Heatmap . |
| run_draw | Whether to run <code>draw()</code> function to the heatmap object. |

Details

This function aims to execute `pheatmap::pheatmap` code purely with `ComplexHeatmap`.

Value

A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

See Also

See https://jokergoo.github.io/2020/05/06/translate-from-pheatmap-to-complexheatmap/compare_pheatmap that compares heatmaps between `pheatmap::pheatmap()` and `ComplexHeatmap::pheatmap()`.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

pindex

Get Values in a Matrix by Pair-wise Indices

Description

Get Values in a Matrix by Pair-wise Indices

Usage

```
pindex(m, i, j)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|--|
| <code>m</code> | A matrix or a 3-dimension array. |
| <code>i</code> | Row indices or the indices in the first dimension. |
| <code>j</code> | Column indices or the indices in the second dimension. |

Value

If `m` is a matrix, the value returned is a vector `c(m[i1, j1], m[i2, j2], ...)`.

If `m` is an array, the value returned is a matrix `rbind(m[i1, j1,], m[i2, j2,], ...)`.

Examples

```
m = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
m2 = m[m > 0]
ind = do.call("rbind", lapply(1:10, function(ci) {
  i = which(m[, ci] > 0)
  cbind(i = i, j = rep(ci, length(i)))
}))
pindex(m, ind[, 1], ind[, 2])
identical(pindex(m, ind[, 1], ind[, 2]), m[m > 0])

# 3d array
arr = array(1:27, dim = c(3, 3, 3))
pindex(arr, 1:2, 2:3)
identical(pindex(arr, 1:2, 2:3),
  rbind(arr[1, 2, ], arr[2, 3, ]))
```

plot.Heatmap

Draw heatmap

Description

Draw heatmap

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'Heatmap'
plot(x, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------|---|
| <code>x</code> | A Heatmap-class object. |
| <code>...</code> | All pass to draw,Heatmap-method . |

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

plot.HeatmapAnnotation

Draw heatmap annotations

Description

Draw heatmap annotations

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'  
plot(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x A [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object.
... All pass to [draw,HeatmapList-method](#).

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

plot.HeatmapList

Draw heatmap

Description

Draw heatmap

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapList'  
plot(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.
... All pass to [draw,HeatmapList-method](#).

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

prepare-Heatmap-method

Prepare the Heatmap

Description

Prepare the Heatmap

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'  
prepare(object, process_rows = TRUE, process_columns = TRUE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| object | A Heatmap-class object. |
| process_rows | Whether to process rows of the heatmap. |
| process_columns | Whether to process columns of the heatmap. |

Details

The preparation of the heatmap includes following steps:

- making clustering on rows (by calling [make_row_cluster,Heatmap-method](#))
- making clustering on columns (by calling [make_column_cluster,Heatmap-method](#))
- making the layout of the heatmap (by calling [make_layout,Heatmap-method](#))

This function is only for internal use.

Value

The [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| print.comb_mat | <i>Print the comb_mat Object</i> |
|----------------|----------------------------------|

Description

Print the comb_mat Object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'comb_mat'  
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----|--|
| x | A combination matrix returned by make_comb_mat . |
| ... | Other arguments |

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|----------------|--|
| restore_matrix | <i>Restore the index vector to index matrix in layer_fun</i> |
|----------------|--|

Description

Restore the index vector to index matrix in layer_fun

Usage

```
restore_matrix(j, i, x, y)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---|--|
| j | Column indices directly from layer_fun. |
| i | Row indices directly from layer_fun. |
| x | Position on x-direction directly from layer_fun. |
| y | Position on y-direction directly from layer_fun. |

Details

The values that are sent to `layer_fun` are all vectors (for the vectorization of the grid graphic functions), however, the heatmap slice where `layer_fun` is applied to, is still represented by a matrix, thus, it would be very convenient if all the arguments in `layer_fun` can be converted to the sub-matrix for the current slice. Here, as shown in above example, `restore_matrix` does the job. `restore_matrix` directly accepts the first four argument in `layer_fun` and returns an index matrix, where rows and columns correspond to the rows and columns in the current slice, from top to bottom and from left to right. The values in the matrix are the natural order of e.g. vector `j` in current slice.

For following code:

```
Heatmap(small_mat, name = "mat", col = col_fun,
        row_km = 2, column_km = 2,
        layer_fun = function(j, i, x, y, w, h, fill) {
          ind_mat = restore_matrix(j, i, x, y)
          print(ind_mat)
        }
)
```

The first output which is for the top-left slice:

```
      [,1] [,2] [,3] [,4] [,5]
[1,]    1    4    7   10   13
[2,]    2    5    8   11   14
[3,]    3    6    9   12   15
```

As you see, this is a three-row and five-column index matrix where the first row corresponds to the top row in the slice. The values in the matrix correspond to the natural index (i.e. 1, 2, ...) in `j`, `i`, `x`, `y`, ... in `layer_fun`. Now, if we want to add values on the second column in the top-left slice, the code which is put inside `layer_fun` would look like:

```
for(ind in ind_mat[, 2]) {
  grid.text(small_mat[i[ind]], j[ind], x[ind], y[ind], ...)
}
```

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
mat = matrix(rnorm(81), nr = 9)
Heatmap(mat, row_km = 2, column_km = 2,
        layer_fun = function(j, i, x, y, width, height, fill) {
          ind_mat = restore_matrix(j, i, x, y)
          print(ind_mat)
        })

set.seed(123)
mat = matrix(round(rnorm(81), 2), nr = 9)
Heatmap(mat, row_km = 2, column_km = 2,
        layer_fun = function(j, i, x, y, width, height, fill) {
          ind_mat = restore_matrix(j, i, x, y)
          ind = unique(c(ind_mat[2, ], ind_mat[, 3]))
          grid.text(pindex(mat, i[ind], j[ind]), x[ind], y[ind])
        })
```

re_size-HeatmapAnnotation-method

Resize the Width or Height of Heatmap Annotations

Description

Resize the Width or Height of Heatmap Annotations

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapAnnotation'
re_size(object,
  annotation_height = NULL,
  annotation_width = NULL,
  height = NULL,
  width = NULL,
  simple_anno_size = object@param$simple_anno_size,
  simple_anno_size_adjust = object@param$simple_anno_size_adjust)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| object | A HeatmapAnnotation-class object. |
| annotation_height | A vector of of annotation heights in unit class. |
| annotation_width | A vector of of annotation widths in unit class. |
| height | The height of the complete heatmap annotation. |
| width | The width of the complete heatmap annotation. |
| simple_anno_size | The size of one line of the simple annotation. |
| simple_anno_size_adjust | Whether adjust the size of the simple annotation? |

Details

The function only adjust height for column annotations and width for row annotations.

The basic rules are (take height and annotation_height for example):

1. If annotation_height is set and all annotation_height are absolute units, height is ignored.
2. If annotation_height contains non-absolute units, height also need to be set and the non-absolute units should be set in a simple form such as 1:10 or unit(1, "null").
3. simple_anno_size is only used when annotation_height is NULL.
4. If only height is set, non-simple annotation is adjusted while keeps simple annotation unchanged.
5. If only height is set and all annotations are simple annotations, all annotations are adjusted, and simple_anno_size is disabled.
6. If simple_anno_size_adjust is FALSE, the size of the simple annotations will not change.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| rowAnnotation | <i>Construct Row Annotations</i> |
|---------------|----------------------------------|

Description

Construct Row Annotations

Usage

```
rowAnnotation(...)
```

Arguments

... Pass to [HeatmapAnnotation](#).

Details

The function is identical to

```
HeatmapAnnotation(..., which = "row")
```

Value

A [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| row_anno_barplot | <i>Barplots as Row Annotation</i> |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|

Description

Barplots as Row Annotation

Usage

```
row_anno_barplot(...)
```

Arguments

... pass to [anno_barplot](#).

Details

A wrapper of [anno_barplot](#) with pre-defined which to row.

You can directly use [anno_barplot](#) for row annotation if you call it in [rowAnnotation](#).

Value

See help page of [anno_barplot](#).

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| row_anno_boxplot | <i>Boxplots as Row Annotation</i> |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|

Description

Boxplots as Row Annotation

Usage

```
row_anno_boxplot(...)
```

Arguments

... pass to [anno_boxplot](#).

Details

A wrapper of [anno_boxplot](#) with pre-defined which to row.

You can directly use [anno_boxplot](#) for row annotation if you call it in [rowAnnotation](#).

Value

See help page of [anno_boxplot](#).

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| row_anno_density | <i>Density as Row Annotation</i> |
|------------------|----------------------------------|

Description

Density as Row Annotation

Usage

```
row_anno_density(...)
```

Arguments

... pass to [anno_density](#).

Details

A wrapper of [anno_density](#) with pre-defined which to row.

You can directly use [anno_density](#) for row annotation if you call it in [rowAnnotation](#).

Value

See help page of [anno_density](#).

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| row_anno_histogram | <i>Histograms as Row Annotation</i> |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|

Description

Histograms as Row Annotation

Usage

```
row_anno_histogram(...)
```

Arguments

... pass to [anno_histogram](#).

Details

A wrapper of [anno_histogram](#) with pre-defined which to row.

You can directly use [anno_histogram](#) for row annotation if you call it in [rowAnnotation](#).

Value

See help page of [anno_histogram](#).

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| row_anno_points | <i>Points as Row Annotation</i> |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|

Description

Points as Row Annotation

Usage

```
row_anno_points(...)
```

Arguments

... pass to [anno_points](#).

Details

A wrapper of [anno_points](#) with pre-defined which to row.

You can directly use [anno_points](#) for row annotation if you call it in [rowAnnotation](#).

Value

See help page of [anno_points](#).

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| row_anno_text | <i>Text as Row Annotation</i> |
|---------------|-------------------------------|

Description

Text as Row Annotation

Usage

```
row_anno_text(...)
```

Arguments

... pass to [anno_text](#).

Details

A wrapper of [anno_text](#) with pre-defined which to row.

You can directly use [anno_text](#) for row annotation if you call it in [rowAnnotation](#).

Value

See help page of [anno_text](#).

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| row_dend-dispatch | <i>Method dispatch page for row_dend</i> |
|-------------------|--|

Description

Method dispatch page for row_dend.

Dispatch

row_dend can be dispatched on following classes:

- [row_dend,HeatmapList-method, HeatmapList-class](#) class method
- [row_dend,Heatmap-method, Heatmap-class](#) class method

Examples

```
# no example
NULL
```

 row_dend-Heatmap-method

Get Row Dendrograms from a Heatmap

Description

Get Row Dendrograms from a Heatmap

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
row_dend(object, on_slice = FALSE)
```

Arguments

object A [Heatmap-class](#) object.
 on_slice If the value is TRUE, it returns the dendrogram on the slice level.

Value

The format of the returned object depends on whether rows/columns of the heatmaps are split.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
ht = Heatmap(mat)
ht = draw(ht)
row_dend(ht)
ht = Heatmap(mat, row_km = 2)
ht = draw(ht)
row_dend(ht)
```

 row_dend-HeatmapList-method

Get Row Dendrograms from a Heatmap List

Description

Get Row Dendrograms from a Heatmap List

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'
row_dend(object, name = NULL, on_slice = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|---|
| object | A HeatmapList-class object. |
| name | Name of a specific heatmap. |
| on_slice | If the value is TRUE, it returns the dendrogram on the slice level. |

Value

The format of the returned object depends on whether rows/columns of the heatmaps are split.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat) + Heatmap(mat)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
row_dend(ht_list)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat, row_km = 2) + Heatmap(mat)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
row_dend(ht_list)
row_dend(ht_list, on_slice = TRUE)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat, row_km = 2) %v% Heatmap(mat)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
row_dend(ht_list)
```

row_order-dispatch *Method dispatch page for row_order*

Description

Method dispatch page for row_order.

Dispatch

row_order can be dispatched on following classes:

- [row_order, HeatmapList-method, HeatmapList-class](#) class method
- [row_order, Heatmap-method, Heatmap-class](#) class method

Examples

```
# no example
NULL
```

row_order-Heatmap-method

Get Row Order from a Heatmap

Description

Get Row Order from a Heatmap

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'  
row_order(object)
```

Arguments

object A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Value

The format of the returned object depends on whether rows/columns of the heatmaps are split.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)  
ht = Heatmap(mat)  
ht = draw(ht)  
row_order(ht)  
ht = Heatmap(mat, row_km = 2)  
ht = draw(ht)  
row_order(ht)
```

row_order-HeatmapList-method

Get Row Order from a Heatmap List

Description

Get Row Order from a Heatmap List

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'  
row_order(object, name = NULL)
```


Arguments

object A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.
 name Name of a specific heatmap.

Value

The format of the returned object depends on whether rows/columns of the heatmaps are split.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
mat = matrix(rnorm(100), 10)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat) + Heatmap(mat)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
row_order(ht_list)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat, row_km = 2) + Heatmap(mat)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
row_order(ht_list)
ht_list = Heatmap(mat, row_km = 2) %v% Heatmap(mat)
ht_list = draw(ht_list)
row_order(ht_list)
```

set_component_height-Heatmap-method

Set Height of Heatmap Component

Description

Set Height of Heatmap Component

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
set_component_height(object, k, v)
```

Arguments

object A [Heatmap-class](#) object.
 k Which column component? The value should a numeric index or the name of the corresponding column component. See ****Details****.
 v Height of the component, a [unit](#) object.

Details

All column components are: column_title_top, column_dend_top, column_names_top, column_anno_top, heatmap_body, column_anno_bottom, column_names_bottom, column_dend_bottom, column_title_bottom.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

The [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

set_component_width-Heatmap-method

Set Width of Heatmap Component

Description

Set Width of Heatmap Component

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'
set_component_width(object, k, v)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--|
| object | A Heatmap-class object. |
| k | Which row component? The value should a numeric index or the name of the corresponding row component. See **Details** . |
| v | width of the component, a unit object. |

Details

All row components are: row_title_left, row_dend_left, row_names_left, row_anno_left, heatmap_body, row_anno_right, row_names_right, row_dend_right, row_title_right.

This function is only for internal use.

Value

The [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|----------|------------------|
| set_name | <i>Set Names</i> |
|----------|------------------|

Description

Set Names

Usage

```
set_name(m)
```

Arguments

m A combination matrix returned by [make_comb_mat](#).

Value

A vector of set names.

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
lt = list(a = sample(letters, 10),
         b = sample(letters, 15),
         c = sample(letters, 20))
m = make_comb_mat(lt)
set_name(m)
```

| | |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| set_nameAssign | <i>Modify Set Names</i> |
|----------------|-------------------------|

Description

Modify Set Names

Usage

```
set_name(x, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

x A combination matrix returned by [make_comb_mat](#).
value New set names.
... Other arguments.

Examples

```

set.seed(123)
lt = list(a = sample(letters, 10),
          b = sample(letters, 15),
          c = sample(letters, 20))
m = make_comb_mat(lt)
set_name(m) = c("A", "B", "C")
m

```

set_size

Set Sizes

Description

Set Sizes

Usage

```
set_size(m)
```

Arguments

m A combination matrix returned by [make_comb_mat](#).

Value

A vector of set sizes.

Examples

```

set.seed(123)
lt = list(a = sample(letters, 10),
          b = sample(letters, 15),
          c = sample(letters, 20))
m = make_comb_mat(lt)
set_size(m)

```

show-AnnotationFunction-method

Print the AnnotationFunction Object

Description

Print the AnnotationFunction Object

Usage

```

## S4 method for signature 'AnnotationFunction'
show(object)

```

Arguments

object The [AnnotationFunction-class](#) object.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

show-ColorMapping-method

Print the ColorMapping Object

Description

Print the ColorMapping Object

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'ColorMapping'
show(object)
```

Arguments

object A [ColorMapping-class](#) object.

Value

This function returns no value.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

show-dispatch *Method dispatch page for show*

Description

Method dispatch page for show.

Dispatch

show can be dispatched on following classes:

- [show, AnnotationFunction-method, AnnotationFunction-class](#) class method
- [show, Heatmap-method, Heatmap-class](#) class method
- [show, HeatmapList-method, HeatmapList-class](#) class method
- [show, ColorMapping-method, ColorMapping-class](#) class method
- [show, HeatmapAnnotation-method, HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) class method
- [show, SingleAnnotation-method, SingleAnnotation-class](#) class method

Examples

```
# no example  
NULL
```

show-Heatmap-method *Draw the Single Heatmap with Defaults*

Description

Draw the Single Heatmap with Defaults

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Heatmap'  
show(object)
```

Arguments

object A [Heatmap-class](#) object.

Details

It actually calls [draw, Heatmap-method](#), but only with default parameters. If users want to customize the heatmap, they can pass parameters directly to [draw, Heatmap-method](#).

Value

The [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

show-HeatmapAnnotation-method
Print the HeatmapAnnotation object

Description

Print the HeatmapAnnotation object

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapAnnotation'  
show(object)
```

Arguments

object A [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object.

Value

No value is returned.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

show-HeatmapList-method

Draw a list of heatmaps with default parameters

Description

Draw a list of heatmaps with default parameters

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'HeatmapList'  
show(object)
```

Arguments

object a [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

Details

Actually it calls [draw,HeatmapList-method](#), but only with default parameters. If users want to customize the heatmap, they can pass parameters directly to [draw,HeatmapList-method](#).

Value

This function returns no value.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

show-SingleAnnotation-method

Print the SingleAnnotation object

Description

Print the SingleAnnotation object

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'SingleAnnotation'  
show(object)
```

Arguments

object A [SingleAnnotation-class](#) object.

Value

No value is returned.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

| | |
|------------------|--|
| SingleAnnotation | <i>Constructor Method for SingleAnnotation Class</i> |
|------------------|--|

Description

Constructor Method for SingleAnnotation Class

Usage

```
SingleAnnotation(name, value, col, fun,
  label = NULL,
  na_col = "grey",
  which = c("column", "row"),
  show_legend = TRUE,
  gp = gpar(col = NA),
  border = FALSE,
  legend_param = list(),
  show_name = TRUE,
  name_gp = gpar(fontsize = 12),
  name_offset = NULL,
  name_side = ifelse(which == "column", "right", "bottom"),
  name_rot = NULL,
  simple_anno_size = ht_opt$simple_anno_size,
  width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|---|
| name | Name for the annotation. If it is not specified, an internal name is assigned. |
| value | A vector or a matrix of discrete or continuous values. |
| col | Colors corresponding to value. If the mapping is discrete, the value of col should be a named vector; If the mapping is continuous, the value of col should be a color mapping function. |
| fun | A user-defined function to add annotation graphics. The argument of this function should be at least a vector of index that corresponds to rows or columns. Normally the function should be constructed by AnnotationFunction if you want the annotation supports splitting. See **Details** for more explanation. |
| label | Label for the annotation. By default is the annotation name. |

| | |
|------------------|---|
| na_col | Color for NA values in the simple annotations. |
| which | Whether the annotation is a row annotation or a column annotation? |
| show_legend | If it is a simple annotation, whether show legend in the final heatmap? |
| gp | Since simple annotation is represented as rows of grids. This argument controls graphic parameters for the simple annotation. The fill parameter is ignored here. |
| border | border, only work for simple annotation |
| legend_param | Parameters for the legend. See color_mapping_legend , ColorMapping-method for all possible options. |
| show_name | Whether show annotation name? |
| name_gp | Graphic parameters for annotation name. |
| name_offset | Offset to the annotation, a unit object. |
| name_side | 'right' and 'left' for column annotations and 'top' and 'bottom' for row annotations |
| name_rot | Rotation of the annotation name. |
| simple_anno_size | size of the simple annotation. |
| width | The width of the plotting region (the viewport) that the annotation is drawn. If it is a row annotation, the width must be an absolute unit. |
| height | The height of the plotting region (the viewport) that the annotation is drawn. If it is a column annotation, the width must be an absolute unit. |

Details

A single annotation is a basic unit of complex heatmap annotations where the heatmap annotations are always a list of single annotations. An annotation can be simply heatmap-like (here we call it simple annotation) or more complex like points, lines, boxes (for which we call it complex annotation).

In the [SingleAnnotation](#) constructor, `value`, `col`, `na_col` are used to construct a [anno_simple](#) annotation function which is generated internally by [AnnotationFunction](#). The legend of the simple annotation can be automatically generated,

For constructing a complex annotation, users need to use `fun` which is a user-defined function. Normally it is constructed by [AnnotationFunction](#). One big advantage for using [AnnotationFunction](#) is the annotation function or the graphics drawn by the annotation function can be split according to row splitting or column splitting of the heatmap. Users can also provide a "pure" function which is a normal R function for the `fun` argument. The function only needs one argument which is a vector of index for rows or columns depending whether it is a row annotation or column annotation. The other two optional arguments are the current slice index and total number of slices. See **Examples** section for an example. If it is a normal R function, it will be constructed into the [AnnotationFunction-class](#) object internally.

The [SingleAnnotation-class](#) is a simple wrapper on top of [AnnotationFunction-class](#) only with annotation name added.

The class also stored the "extended area" relative to the area for the annotation graphics. The extended areas are those created by annotation names and axes.

Value

A [SingleAnnotation-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

There are following built-in annotation functions that can be directly used to generate complex annotations: [anno_simple](#), [anno_points](#), [anno_lines](#), [anno_barplot](#), [anno_histogram](#), [anno_boxplot](#), [anno_density](#), [anno_text](#), [anno_joyplot](#), [anno_horizon](#), [anno_image](#), [anno_block](#), [anno_summary](#) and [anno_mark](#).

Examples

```

ha = SingleAnnotation(value = 1:10)
draw(ha, test = "single column annotation")

m = cbind(1:10, 10:1)
colnames(m) = c("a", "b")
ha = SingleAnnotation(value = m)
draw(ha, test = "matrix as column annotation")

anno = anno_barplot(matrix(nc = 2, c(1:10, 10:1)))
ha = SingleAnnotation(fun = anno)
draw(ha, test = "anno_barplot as input")

fun = local({
  # because there variables outside the function for use, we put it a local environment
  value = 1:10
  function(index, k = 1, n = 1) {
    pushViewport(viewport(xscale = c(0.5, length(index) + 0.5), yscale = range(value)))
    grid.points(seq_along(index), value[index])
    grid.rect()
    if(k == 1) grid.yaxis()
    popViewport()
  }
})
ha = SingleAnnotation(fun = fun, height = unit(4, "cm"))
draw(ha, index = 1:10, test = "self-defined function")

```

SingleAnnotation-class

Class for a Single Annotation

Description

Class for a Single Annotation

Details

The [SingleAnnotation-class](#) is used for storing data for a single annotation and provides methods for drawing annotation graphics.

Methods

The `SingleAnnotation-class` provides following methods:

- `SingleAnnotation`: constructor method
- `draw,SingleAnnotation-method`: draw the single annotation.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

The `SingleAnnotation-class` is always used internally. The public `HeatmapAnnotation-class` contains a list of `SingleAnnotation-class` objects and is used to add annotation graphics on heatmaps.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

size.AnnotationFunction

Size of the AnnotationFunction Object

Description

Size of the AnnotationFunction Object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'AnnotationFunction'  
size(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x The `AnnotationFunction-class` object.
... Other arguments.

Details

It returns the width if it is a row annotation and the height if it is a column annotation.
Internally used.

Examples

```
anno = anno_points(1:10)  
ComplexHeatmap:::size(anno)  
anno = anno_points(1:10, which = "row")  
ComplexHeatmap:::size(anno)
```

`size.HeatmapAnnotation`*Size of the HeatmapAnnotation Object*

Description

Size of the HeatmapAnnotation Object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'  
size(x, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----|---|
| x | The HeatmapAnnotation-class object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

It returns the width if it is a row annotation and the height if it is a column annotation.
Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

`size.SingleAnnotation` *Size of the SingleAnnotation Object*

Description

Size of the SingleAnnotation Object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'SingleAnnotation'  
size(x, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----|--|
| x | The SingleAnnotation-class object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

It returns the width if it is a row annotation and the height if it is a column annotation.
Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

```
sizeAssign.AnnotationFunction
```

Assign the Size to the AnnotationFunction Object

Description

Assign the Size to the AnnotationFunction Object

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class 'AnnotationFunction'
size(x, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| x | The AnnotationFunction-class object. |
| value | A unit object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

It assigns to the width if it is a row annotation and the height if it is a column annotation.
Internally used.

Examples

```
anno = anno_points(1:10)
ComplexHeatmap:::size(anno) = unit(4, "cm")
ComplexHeatmap:::size(anno)
```

```
sizeAssign.HeatmapAnnotation
```

Assign the Size to the HeatmapAnnotation Object

Description

Assign the Size to the HeatmapAnnotation Object

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'
size(x, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|---|
| x | The HeatmapAnnotation-class object. |
| value | A unit object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

It assigns the width if it is a row annotation and the height if it is a column annotation.
Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

```
sizeAssign.SingleAnnotation
```

Assign the Size to the SingleAnnotation Object

Description

Assign the Size to the SingleAnnotation Object

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class 'SingleAnnotation'  
size(x, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| x | The SingleAnnotation-class object. |
| value | A unit object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

It assigns to the width if it is a row annotation and the height if it is a column annotation.
Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

 smartAlign2

Adjust positions of rectangular shapes

Description

Adjust positions of rectangular shapes

Usage

```
smartAlign2(start, end, range, plot = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| start | position which corresponds to the start (bottom or left) of the rectangle-shapes. |
| end | position which corresponds to the end (top or right) of the rectangular shapes. |
| range | data ranges (the minimal and maximal values) |
| plot | Whether plot the correspondance between the original positions and the adjusted positions. Only for testing. |

Details

This is an improved version of the [smartAlign](#).

It adjusts the positions of the rectangular shapes to make them do not overlap

Examples

```
range = c(0, 10)
pos1 = rbind(c(1, 2), c(5, 7))
smartAlign2(pos1, range = range, plot = TRUE)
```

```
range = c(0, 10)
pos1 = rbind(c(-0.5, 2), c(5, 7))
smartAlign2(pos1, range = range, plot = TRUE)
```

```
pos1 = rbind(c(-1, 2), c(3, 4), c(5, 6), c(7, 11))
pos1 = pos1 + runif(length(pos1), max = 0.3, min = -0.3)
omfrow = par("mfrow")
par(mfrow = c(3, 3))
for(i in 1:9) {
  ind = sample(4, 4)
  smartAlign2(pos1[ind, ], range = range, plot = TRUE)
}
par(mfrow = omfrow)
```

```
pos1 = rbind(c(3, 6), c(4, 7))
smartAlign2(pos1, range = range, plot = TRUE)
```

```
pos1 = rbind(c(1, 8), c(3, 10))
smartAlign2(pos1, range = range, plot = TRUE)
```

| | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| str.comb_mat | <i>str method</i> |
|--------------|-------------------|

Description

str method

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'comb_mat'  
str(object, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--|
| object | A combination matrix returned by make_comb_mat . |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|-----------|-----------------------------|
| subset_gp | <i>Subset a gpar Object</i> |
|-----------|-----------------------------|

Description

Subset a gpar Object

Usage

```
subset_gp(gp, i)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----|--------------------------------|
| gp | A gpar object. |
| i | A vector of indices. |

Value

A [gpar](#) object.

Examples

```
gp = gpar(col = 1:10, fill = 1)  
subset_gp(gp, 1:5)
```

subset_matrix_by_row *Subset the Matrix by Rows*

Description

Subset the Matrix by Rows

Usage

```
subset_matrix_by_row(x, i)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---|------------------|
| x | A matrix. |
| i | The row indices. |

Details

Mainly used for constructing the [AnnotationFunction-class](#) object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

subset_no *Do not do subsetting*

Description

Do not do subsetting

Usage

```
subset_no(x, i)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---|--------------|
| x | A vector. |
| i | The indices. |

Details

Mainly used for constructing the [AnnotationFunction-class](#) object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| subset_vector | <i>Subset the vector</i> |
|---------------|--------------------------|

Description

Subset the vector

Usage

```
subset_vector(x, i)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---|--------------|
| x | A vector. |
| i | The indices. |

Details

Mainly used for constructing the [AnnotationFunction-class](#) object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| summary.Heatmap | <i>Print the Summary of a Heatmap</i> |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|

Description

Print the Summary of a Heatmap

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'Heatmap'  
summary(object, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|---|
| object | A Heatmap-class object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

summary.HeatmapList *Summary of a Heatmap List*

Description

Summary of a Heatmap List

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapList'  
summary(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.
... Other arguments.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

t.comb_mat *Transpose the Combination Matrix*

Description

Transpose the Combination Matrix

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'comb_mat'  
t(x)
```

Arguments

x A combination matrix returned by [make_comb_mat](#).

Examples

```
set.seed(123)  
lt = list(a = sample(letters, 10),  
          b = sample(letters, 15),  
          c = sample(letters, 20))  
m = make_comb_mat(lt)  
t(m)
```

| | |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| test_alter_fun | <i>Test alter_fun for oncoPrint()</i> |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|

Description

Test alter_fun for oncoPrint()

Usage

```
test_alter_fun(fun, type, asp_ratio = 1)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|---|
| fun | The alter_fun for <code>oncoPrint</code> . The value can be a list of functions or a single function. See https://jokergoo.github.io/ComplexHeatmap-reference/book/oncoprint.html#define-the-alter-fun |
| type | A vector of alteration types. It is only used when fun is a single function. |
| asp_ratio | The aspect ratio (width/height) for the small rectangles. |

Details

This function helps you to have a quick view of how the graphics for each alteration type and combinations look like.

Examples

```
alter_fun = list(
  mut1 = function(x, y, w, h) grid.rect(x, y, w, h, gp = gpar(fill = "red", col = NA)),
  mut2 = function(x, y, w, h) grid.rect(x, y, w, h, gp = gpar(fill = "blue", col = NA)),
  mut3 = function(x, y, w, h) grid.rect(x, y, w, h, gp = gpar(fill = "yellow", col = NA)),
  mut4 = function(x, y, w, h) grid.rect(x, y, w, h, gp = gpar(fill = "purple", col = NA)),
  mut5 = function(x, y, w, h) grid.rect(x, y, w, h, gp = gpar(lwd = 2)),
  mut6 = function(x, y, w, h) grid.points(x, y, pch = 16),
  mut7 = function(x, y, w, h) grid.segments(x - w*0.5, y - h*0.5, x + w*0.5, y + h*0.5, gp = gpar(lwd = 2))
)
test_alter_fun(alter_fun)
```

| | |
|--------------|---|
| textbox_grob | <i>A simple grob for the word cloud</i> |
|--------------|---|

Description

A simple grob for the word cloud

Usage

```
textbox_grob(text, x = unit(0.5, "npc"), y = unit(0.5, "npc"), just = "centre",
  gp = gpar(), background_gp = gpar(col = "black", fill = "transparent"), round_corners = FALSE, r =
  line_space = unit(4, "pt"), text_space = unit(4, "pt"), max_width = unit(100, "mm"),
  padding = unit(4, "pt"), first_text_from = "top", add_new_line = FALSE, word_wrap = FALSE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| text | A vector of texts. The value can be single words or phrases/sentences. |
| x | X position. |
| y | Y position. |
| just | Justification of the box in the viewport. |
| gp | Graphics parameters of texts. |
| background_gp | Graphics parameters for the box. |
| round_corners | Whether to draw round corners for the box. |
| r | Radius of the round corners. |
| line_space | Space between lines. The value can be a unit object or a numeric scalar which is measured in mm. |
| text_space | Space between texts. The value can be a unit object or a numeric scalar which is measured in mm. |
| max_width | The maximal width of the viewport to put the word cloud. The value can be a unit object or a numeric scalar which is measured in mm. Note this might be larger than the final width of the returned grob object. |
| padding | Padding of the box, i.e. space between text and the four box borders. The value should be a unit object with length 1, 2 or 4. If length of the input unit is 2, the first value is the padding both to the top and to the bottom, and the second value is the padding to the left and right. If length of the input unit is 4, the four values correspond to paddings to the bottom, left, top and right of the box. |
| first_text_from | Should the texts be added from the top of the box or from the bottom? Value should be either "top" or "bottom". |
| add_new_line | Whether to add new line after every text? If TRUE, each text will be in a separated line. |
| word_wrap | Whether to apply word wrap for phrases/sentences. |

Value

A [grob](#) object. The width and height of the grob can be get by [grobWidth](#) and [grobHeight](#).

Examples

```
words = sapply(1:30, function(x) strrep(sample(letters, 1), sample(3:10, 1)))
grid.newpage()
grid.textbox(words, gp = gpar(fontsize = runif(30, min = 5, max = 30)))

sentences = c("This is sentence 1", "This is a long long long long long long long sentence.")
grid.newpage()
grid.textbox(sentences)
grid.textbox(sentences, word_wrap = TRUE)
grid.textbox(sentences, word_wrap = TRUE, add_new_line = TRUE)
```

| | |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| unify_mat_list | <i>Unify a List of Matrix</i> |
|----------------|-------------------------------|

Description

Unify a List of Matrix

Usage

```
unify_mat_list(mat_list, default = 0)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|--|
| mat_list | A list of matrix. All of them should have dimension names. |
| default | Default values for the newly added rows and columns. |

Details

All matrix will be unified to have same row names and column names.

Value

A list of matrix

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|-------|----------------------------|
| UpSet | <i>Make the UpSet plot</i> |
|-------|----------------------------|

Description

Make the UpSet plot

Usage

```
UpSet(m,
      comb_col = "black",
      pt_size = unit(3, "mm"), lwd = 2,
      bg_col = "#F0F0F0", bg_pt_col = "#CCCCCC",
      set_order = order(set_size(m), decreasing = TRUE),
      comb_order = if(attr(m, "param")$set_on_rows) {
        order.comb_mat(m[set_order, ], decreasing = TRUE)
      } else {
        order.comb_mat(m[, set_order], decreasing = TRUE)
      },
      top_annotation = upset_top_annotation(m),
      right_annotation = upset_right_annotation(m),
      left_annotation = NULL,
      row_names_side = "left",
      ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>m</code> | A combination matrix returned by make_comb_mat . The matrix can be transposed to switch the position of sets and combination sets. |
| <code>comb_col</code> | The color for the dots representing combination sets. |
| <code>pt_size</code> | The point size for the dots representing combination sets. |
| <code>lwd</code> | The line width for the combination sets. |
| <code>bg_col</code> | Color for the background rectangles. |
| <code>bg_pt_col</code> | Color for the dots representing the set is not selected. |
| <code>set_order</code> | The order of sets. |
| <code>comb_order</code> | The order of combination sets. |
| <code>top_annotation</code> | A HeatmapAnnotation object on top of the combination matrix. |
| <code>left_annotation</code> | A HeatmapAnnotation object on top of the combination matrix. |
| <code>right_annotation</code> | A HeatmapAnnotation object on the right of the combination matrix. |
| <code>row_names_side</code> | The side of row names. |
| <code>...</code> | Other arguments passed to Heatmap . |

Details

By default, the sets are on rows and combination sets are on columns. The positions of the two types of sets can be switched by transposing the matrix.

When sets are on rows, the default top annotation is the barplot showing the size of each combination sets and the default right annotation is the barplot showing the size of the sets. The annotations are simply constructed by [HeatmapAnnotation](#) and [anno_barplot](#) with some parameters pre-set. Users can check the source code of [upset_top_annotation](#) and [upset_right_annotation](#) to find out how the annotations are defined.

To change or to add annotations, users just need to define a new [HeatmapAnnotation](#) object. E.g. if we want to change the side of the axis and name on top annotation:


```

Upset(..., top_annotation =
  HeatmapAnnotation(
    "Intersection size" = anno_barplot(
      comb_size(m),
      border = FALSE,
      gp = gpar(fill = "black"),
      height = unit(2, "cm"),
      axis_param = list(side = "right")
    ),
    annotation_name_side = "right",
    annotation_name_rot = 0)
)

```

To add more annotations on top, users just add it in [HeatmapAnnotation](#):

```

Upset(..., top_annotation =
  HeatmapAnnotation(
    "Intersection size" = anno_barplot(
      comb_size(m),
      border = FALSE,
      gp = gpar(fill = "black"),
      height = unit(2, "cm"),
      axis_param = list(side = "right")
    ),
    "anno1" = anno_points(...),
    "anno2" = some_vector,
    annotation_name_side = "right",
    annotation_name_rot = 0)
)

```

And so is for the right annotations.

[UpSet](#) returns a [Heatmap-class](#) object, which means, you can add it with other heatmaps and annotations by + or `%v%`.

Examples

```

set.seed(123)
lt = list(a = sample(letters, 10),
          b = sample(letters, 15),
          c = sample(letters, 20))
m = make_comb_mat(lt)
UpSet(m)
UpSet(t(m))

m = make_comb_mat(lt, mode = "union")
UpSet(m)
UpSet(m, comb_col = c(rep(2, 3), rep(3, 3), 1))

# compare two UpSet plots
set.seed(123)
lt1 = list(a = sample(letters, 10),
           b = sample(letters, 15),
           c = sample(letters, 20))
m1 = make_comb_mat(lt1)

```

```

set.seed(456)
lt2 = list(a = sample(letters, 10),
           b = sample(letters, 15),
           c = sample(letters, 20))
m2 = make_comb_mat(lt2)

max1 = max(c(set_size(m1), set_size(m2)))
max2 = max(c(comb_size(m1), comb_size(m2)))

UpSet(m1, top_annotation = upset_top_annotation(m1, ylim = c(0, max2)),
      right_annotation = upset_right_annotation(m1, ylim = c(0, max1)),
      column_title = "UpSet1") +
UpSet(m2, top_annotation = upset_top_annotation(m2, ylim = c(0, max2)),
      right_annotation = upset_right_annotation(m2, ylim = c(0, max1)),
      column_title = "UpSet2")

```

upset_left_annotation *UpSet Left Annotation*

Description

UpSet Left Annotation

Usage

```

upset_left_annotation(m,
  gp = gpar(fill = "black"),
  axis_param = list(direction = "reverse"),
  width = unit(ifelse(set_on_rows, 2, 3), "cm"),
  show_annotation_name = TRUE,
  annotation_name_gp = gpar(),
  annotation_name_offset = NULL,
  annotation_name_side = "bottom",
  annotation_name_rot = NULL,
  ...)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code>m</code> | A combination matrix which is as same as the one for UpSet . |
| <code>gp</code> | Graphic parameters for bars. |
| <code>axis_param</code> | Parameters for axis. |
| <code>width</code> | Width of the left annotation. |
| <code>show_annotation_name</code> | Whether show annotation names? |
| <code>annotation_name_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for anntation names. |
| <code>annotation_name_offset</code> | Offset to the annotation name, a unit object. |
| <code>annotation_name_side</code> | Side of the annotation name. |

```

annotation_name_rot
    Rotation of the annotation name, it can only take values in c(00, 90, 180,
    270).
...
    Passed to anno\_barplot, e.g. to set add_numbers.

```

Examples

```

# There is no example
NULL

```

```

upset_right_annotation
    Default UpSet Right Annotation

```

Description

Default UpSet Right Annotation

Usage

```

upset_right_annotation(m,
  gp = gpar(fill = "black"),
  width = unit(ifelse(set_on_rows, 2, 3), "cm"),
  show_annotation_name = TRUE,
  annotation_name_gp = gpar(),
  annotation_name_offset = NULL,
  annotation_name_side = "bottom",
  annotation_name_rot = NULL,
  ...)

```

Arguments

```

m          A combination matrix which is as same as the one for UpSet.
gp         Graphic parameters for bars.
width      Width of the right annotation.
show_annotation_name
           Whether show annotation names?
annotation_name_gp
           Graphic parameters for anntation names.
annotation_name_offset
           Offset to the annotation name, a unit object.
annotation_name_side
           Side of the annotation name.
annotation_name_rot
           Rotation of the annotation name, it can only take values in c(00, 90, 180,
           270).
...
           Passed to anno\_barplot, e.g. to set add_numbers.

```

Details

The default right annotation is actually barplot implemented by [anno_barplot](#). For how to set the right annotation or left annotation in [UpSet](#), please refer to [UpSet](#).

If you want to use [decorate_annotation](#) function, the annotation name for the "sets" is `set_size` and the annotation name for the "intersection sets" are `intersection_size` and if under the union mode, it is `union_size`.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

upset_top_annotation *Default UpSet Top Annotation*

Description

Default UpSet Top Annotation

Usage

```
upset_top_annotation(m,
  gp = gpar(fill = "black"),
  height = unit(ifelse(set_on_rows, 3, 2), "cm"),
  show_annotation_name = TRUE,
  annotation_name_gp = gpar(),
  annotation_name_offset = NULL,
  annotation_name_side = "left",
  annotation_name_rot = 0,
  ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code>m</code> | A combination matrix which is as same as the one for UpSet . |
| <code>gp</code> | Graphic parameters for bars. |
| <code>height</code> | The height of the top annotation. |
| <code>show_annotation_name</code> | Whether show annotation names? |
| <code>annotation_name_gp</code> | Graphic parameters for anntation names. |
| <code>annotation_name_offset</code> | Offset to the annotation name, a unit object. |
| <code>annotation_name_side</code> | Side of the annotation name. |
| <code>annotation_name_rot</code> | Rotation of the annotation name, it can only take values in <code>c(00, 90, 180, 270)</code> . |
| <code>...</code> | Passed to anno_barplot . |

Details

The default top annotation is actually barplot implemented by [anno_barplot](#). For how to set the top annotation or bottom annotation in [UpSet](#), please refer to [UpSet](#).

If you want to use [decorate_annotation](#) function, the annotation name for the "sets" is `set_size` and the annotation name for the "intersection sets" are `intersection_size` and if under the union mode, it is `union_size`.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

```
width.AnnotationFunction
```

Width of the AnnotationFunction Object

Description

Width of the AnnotationFunction Object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'AnnotationFunction'
width(x, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------|--|
| <code>x</code> | A AnnotationFunction-class object. |
| <code>...</code> | Other arguments. |

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
anno = anno_points(1:10)
ComplexHeatmap::width(anno)
anno = anno_points(1:10, which = "row")
ComplexHeatmap::width(anno)
```

width.Heatmap

Width of the Heatmap

Description

Width of the Heatmap

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'Heatmap'  
width(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x The [HeatmapList-class](#) object returned by [draw, Heatmap-method](#).
... Other arguments.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

width.HeatmapAnnotation

Width of the HeatmapAnnotation Object

Description

Width of the HeatmapAnnotation Object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'  
width(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x The [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object.
... Other arguments.

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| width.HeatmapList | <i>Width of the Heatmap List</i> |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|

Description

Width of the Heatmap List

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapList'  
width(x, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----|---|
| x | The <code>HeatmapList</code> -class object returned by <code>draw,HeatmapList</code> -method. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

| | |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| width.Legends | <i>Width of the Legends</i> |
|---------------|-----------------------------|

Description

Width of the Legends

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'Legends'  
width(x, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----|---|
| x | The <code>grob</code> object returned by <code>Legend</code> or <code>packLegend</code> . |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Value

The returned unit x is always in mm.

Examples

```
lgd = Legend(labels = 1:10, title = "foo", legend_gp = gpar(fill = "red"))  
ComplexHeatmap::width(lgd)
```

width.SingleAnnotation

Width of the SingleAnnotation Object

Description

Width of the SingleAnnotation Object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'SingleAnnotation'  
width(x, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----|--|
| x | The SingleAnnotation-class object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

widthAssign.AnnotationFunction

Assign the Width to the AnnotationFunction Object

Description

Assign the Width to the AnnotationFunction Object

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class 'AnnotationFunction'  
width(x, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| x | The AnnotationFunction-class object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |
| value | A unit object. |

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

```
widthAssign.HeatmapAnnotation
      Assign the Width to the HeatmapAnnotation Object
```

Description

Assign the Width to the HeatmapAnnotation Object

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'
width(x, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|---|
| x | The HeatmapAnnotation-class object. |
| value | A unit object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

```
widthAssign.SingleAnnotation
      Assign the Width to the SingleAnnotation Object
```

Description

Assign the Width to the SingleAnnotation Object

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class 'SingleAnnotation'
width(x, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| x | The SingleAnnotation-class object. |
| value | A unit object. |
| ... | Other arguments. |

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

```
widthDetails.annotation_axis
      Width for annotation_axis Grob
```

Description

Width for annotation_axis Grob

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'annotation_axis'
widthDetails(x)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---|---|
| x | The annotation_axis grob returned by annotation_axis_grob . |
|---|---|

Details

The physical width of the grob can be get by `convertWidth(grobWidth(axis_grob), "mm")`.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

widthDetails.legend *Grob width for packed_legends*

Description

Grob width for packed_legends

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'legend'  
widthDetails(x)
```

Arguments

x A legend object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

widthDetails.legend_body *Grob width for legend_body*

Description

Grob width for legend_body

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'legend_body'  
widthDetails(x)
```

Arguments

x A legend_body object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

```
widthDetails.packed_legends  
    Grob width for packed_legends
```

Description

Grob width for packed_legends

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'packed_legends'  
widthDetails(x)
```

Arguments

x A packed_legends object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

```
widthDetails.textbox    Width for textbox grob
```

Description

Width for textbox grob

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'textbox'  
widthDetails(x)
```

Arguments

x The textbox grob returned by [textbox_grob](#).

Value

A [unit](#) object.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

[.AnnotationFunction *Subset an AnnotationFunction Object*

Description

Subset an AnnotationFunction Object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'AnnotationFunction'
x[i]
```

Arguments

x An [AnnotationFunction-class](#) object.
i A vector of indices.

Details

One good thing for designing the [AnnotationFunction-class](#) is it can be subsetted, and this is the base for the splitting of the annotations.

Examples

```
anno = anno_simple(1:10)
anno[1:5]
draw(anno[1:5], test = "subset of column annotation")
```

[.comb_mat *Subset the Combination Matrix*

Description

Subset the Combination Matrix

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'comb_mat'
x[i, j, drop = FALSE]
```

Arguments

x A combination matrix returned by [make_comb_mat](#).
i Indices on rows.
j Indices on columns.
drop It is always reset to FALSE internally.

Details

If sets are on rows of the combination matrix, the row indices correspond to sets and column indices correspond to combination sets, and if sets are on columns of the combination matrix, rows correspond to the combination sets.

If the index is one-dimension, e.g. `x[i]`, the index always corresponds to the combination sets.

You should not subset by the sets. It will give you wrong combination set size. The subsetting on sets are only used internally.

This subsetting method is mainly for subsetting combination sets, i.e., users can first use `comb_size` to get the size of each combination set, and filter them by the size.

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
lt = list(a = sample(letters, 10),
         b = sample(letters, 15),
         c = sample(letters, 20))
m = make_comb_mat(lt)
m2 = m[, comb_size(m) >= 3]
comb_size(m2)
m[comb_size(m) >= 3]
```

[.gridtext

Subset method of gridtext class

Description

Subset method of gridtext class

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'gridtext'
x[index]
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>x</code> | A vector of labels generated by <code>gt_render</code> . |
| <code>index</code> | Index |

Details

Internally used.

Examples

```
# There is no example
NULL
```

`[.Heatmap`*Subset a Heatmap*

Description

Subset a Heatmap

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'Heatmap'  
x[i, j]
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|---|
| <code>x</code> | A Heatmap-class object. |
| <code>i</code> | Row indices. |
| <code>j</code> | Column indices. |

Details

This functionality is quite experimental. It should be applied before the layout is initialized.

Examples

```
m = matrix(rnorm(100), nrow = 10)  
rownames(m) = letters[1:10]  
colnames(m) = LETTERS[1:10]  
ht = Heatmap(m)  
ht[1:5, ]  
ht[1:5]  
ht[, 1:5]  
ht[1:5, 1:5]
```

`[.HeatmapAnnotation`*Subset the HeatmapAnnotation object*

Description

Subset the HeatmapAnnotation object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'HeatmapAnnotation'  
x[i, j]
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|---|
| <code>x</code> | A HeatmapAnnotation-class object. |
| <code>i</code> | Index of observations. |
| <code>j</code> | Index of annotations. |

Examples

```

ha = HeatmapAnnotation(foo = 1:10, bar = anno_points(10:1),
  sth = cbind(1:10, 10:1))
ha[1:5, ]
ha[, c("foo", "bar")]
ha[, 1:2]
ha[1:5, c("foo", "sth")]

```

[.HeatmapList

Subset a HeatmapList object

Description

Subset a HeatmapList object

Usage

```

## S3 method for class 'HeatmapList'
x[i, j]

```

Arguments

| | |
|---|--|
| x | A HeatmapList-class object |
| i | row indices |
| j | column indices |

Details

If the heatmap list is horizontal, i is the row indices and j corresponds to heatmap names and single annotation names. and if the heatlist is vertical, i corresponds to heatmap/annotation names and j is the column indices.

Examples

```

ht_list = Heatmap(matrix(rnorm(100), 10), name = "rnorm") +
  rowAnnotation(foo = 1:10, bar = anno_points(10:1)) +
  Heatmap(matrix(runif(100), 10), name = "runif")
summary(ht_list[1:5, ])
summary(ht_list[1:5, 1])
summary(ht_list[1:5, "rnorm"])
summary(ht_list[1:5, c("rnorm", "foo")])

ht_list = Heatmap(matrix(rnorm(100), 10), name = "rnorm") %v%
  columnAnnotation(foo = 1:10, bar = anno_points(10:1)) %v%
  Heatmap(matrix(runif(100), 10), name = "runif")
summary(ht_list[, 1:5])
summary(ht_list[1, 1:5])
summary(ht_list["rnorm", 1:5])
summary(ht_list[c("rnorm", "foo"), 1:5])

```

[.SingleAnnotation *Subset an SingleAnnotation Object*

Description

Subset an SingleAnnotation Object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'SingleAnnotation'
x[i]
```

Arguments

x An [SingleAnnotation-class](#) object.
i A vector of indices.

Details

The SingleAnnotation class object is subsettable only if the containing [AnnotationFunction-class](#) object is subsettable. All the anno_* functions are subsettable, so if the SingleAnnotation object is constructed by one of these functions, it is also subsettable.

Examples

```
ha = SingleAnnotation(value = 1:10)
ha[1:5]
draw(ha[1:5], test = "ha[1:5]")
```

%v% *Vertically Add Heatmaps or Annotations to a Heatmap List*

Description

Vertically Add Heatmaps or Annotations to a Heatmap List

Usage

```
x %v% y
```

Arguments

x A [Heatmap-class](#) object, a [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object or a [HeatmapList-class](#) object.
y A [Heatmap-class](#) object, a [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object or a [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

Details

It is only a helper function. It actually calls [add_heatmap, Heatmap-method](#), [add_heatmap, HeatmapList-method](#) or [add_heatmap, HeatmapAnnotation-method](#) depending on the class of the input objects.

The [HeatmapAnnotation-class](#) object to be added should only be column annotations.

x and y can also be NULL.

Value

A [HeatmapList-class](#) object.

Author(s)

Zuguang Gu <z.gu@dkfz.de>

See Also

[+.AdditiveUnit](#) operator is used for horizontal heatmap list.

Examples

```
# There is no example  
NULL
```

Index

- `+.AdditiveUnit`, 8, 226
- `[.AnnotationFunction`, 221
- `[.Heatmap`, 223
- `[.HeatmapAnnotation`, 223
- `[.HeatmapList`, 224
- `[.SingleAnnotation`, 225
- `[.comb_mat`, 221
- `[.gridtext`, 222
- `%v%`, 8, 10, 11, 118, 209, 225

- `add.AdditiveUnit` (`+.AdditiveUnit`), 8
- `add_heatmap` (`add_heatmap-dispatch`), 10
- `add_heatmap`, `Heatmap`-method
 - (`add_heatmap-Heatmap-method`), 10
- `add_heatmap`, `HeatmapAnnotation`-method
 - (`add_heatmap-HeatmapAnnotation-method`), 11
- `add_heatmap`, `HeatmapList`-method
 - (`add_heatmap-HeatmapList-method`), 12
- `add_heatmap-dispatch`, 10
- `add_heatmap-Heatmap-method`, 10
- `add_heatmap-HeatmapAnnotation-method`, 11
- `add_heatmap-HeatmapList-method`, 12
- `AdditiveUnit`, 9
- `AdditiveUnit`-class, 9
- `adjust_dend_by_x`, 12, 79, 80, 110
- `adjust_heatmap_list`
 - (`adjust_heatmap_list-HeatmapList-method`), 13
- `adjust_heatmap_list`, `HeatmapList`-method
 - (`adjust_heatmap_list-HeatmapList-method`), 13
- `adjust_heatmap_list-HeatmapList-method`, 13

- `alter_graphic`, 14, 164
- `anno_barplot`, 16, 20, 177, 178, 195, 208, 211–213
- `anno_block`, 22, 22, 44, 195
- `anno_boxplot`, 16, 24, 178, 195
- `anno_customize`, 25
- `anno_density`, 16, 26, 179, 195

- `anno_empty`, 15, 16, 27
- `anno_histogram`, 16, 29, 179, 180, 195
- `anno_horizon`, 16, 30, 195
- `anno_image`, 16, 31, 195
- `anno_joyplot`, 16, 32, 195
- `anno_lines`, 16, 33, 195
- `anno_link`, 35, 44
- `anno_mark`, 16, 35, 87, 94, 195
- `anno_numeric`, 37
- `anno_oncoprint_barplot`, 38
- `anno_points`, 16, 28, 39, 122, 180, 195
- `anno_simple`, 40, 41, 194, 195
- `anno_summary`, 41, 195
- `anno_text`, 15, 16, 43, 181, 195
- `anno_textbox`, 44
- `anno_zoom`, 35, 45, 46

- `annotation_axis_grob`, 17, 78, 109, 131, 218
- `annotation_legend_size`
 - (`annotation_legend_size-HeatmapList-method`), 19
- `annotation_legend_size`, `HeatmapList`-method
 - (`annotation_legend_size-HeatmapList-method`), 19
- `annotation_legend_size-HeatmapList-method`, 19

- `AnnotationFunction`, 15, 16, 28, 193, 194
- `AnnotationFunction`-class, 16
- `as.dist`, 84

- `attach_annotation`
 - (`attach_annotation-Heatmap-method`), 46
- `attach_annotation`, `Heatmap`-method
 - (`attach_annotation-Heatmap-method`), 46
- `attach_annotation-Heatmap-method`, 46

- `bar3D`, 47
- `bin_genome`, 48, 160

- `c.ColorMapping`, 48
- `c.HeatmapAnnotation`, 49
- `cluster_between_groups`, 49
- `cluster_within_group`, 50

- color_branches, [110](#)
- color_mapping_legend
 - (color_mapping_legend-ColorMapping-method), [52](#)
- color_mapping_legend, ColorMapping-method
 - (color_mapping_legend-ColorMapping-method), [52](#)
- color_mapping_legend-ColorMapping-method, [52](#)
- ColorMapping, [51](#), [52](#), [115](#)
- ColorMapping-class, [52](#)
- colorRamp2, [40](#), [51](#), [82](#), [105](#), [115](#), [138](#)
- colorRampPalette, [168](#)
- column_dend (column_dend-dispatch), [55](#)
- column_dend, Heatmap-method
 - (column_dend-Heatmap-method), [55](#)
- column_dend, HeatmapList-method
 - (column_dend-HeatmapList-method), [56](#)
- column_dend-dispatch, [55](#)
- column_dend-Heatmap-method, [55](#)
- column_dend-HeatmapList-method, [56](#)
- column_order (column_order-dispatch), [57](#)
- column_order, Heatmap-method
 - (column_order-Heatmap-method), [57](#)
- column_order, HeatmapList-method
 - (column_order-HeatmapList-method), [58](#)
- column_order-dispatch, [57](#)
- column_order-Heatmap-method, [57](#)
- column_order-HeatmapList-method, [58](#)
- columnAnnotation, [54](#), [123](#)
- comb_degree, [59](#), [144](#)
- comb_name, [60](#), [104](#), [144](#)
- comb_size, [60](#), [144](#), [222](#)
- compare_heatmap, [61](#)
- compare_heatmap.2, [61](#)
- compare_pheatmap, [62](#), [170](#)
- complement_size, [63](#)
- ComplexHeatmap-package, [7](#)
- component_height
 - (component_height-dispatch), [63](#)
- component_height, Heatmap-method
 - (component_height-Heatmap-method), [64](#)
- component_height, HeatmapList-method
 - (component_height-HeatmapList-method), [64](#)
- component_height-dispatch, [63](#)
- component_height-Heatmap-method, [64](#)
- component_height-HeatmapList-method,
 - (component_height-HeatmapList-method), [64](#)
- component_width
 - (component_width-dispatch), [65](#)
- component_width, Heatmap-method
 - (component_width-Heatmap-method), [66](#)
- component_width, HeatmapList-method
 - (component_width-HeatmapList-method), [66](#)
- component_width-dispatch, [65](#)
- component_width-Heatmap-method, [66](#)
- component_width-HeatmapList-method, [66](#)
- copy_all (copy_all-dispatch), [68](#)
- copy_all, AnnotationFunction-method
 - (copy_all-AnnotationFunction-method), [67](#)
- copy_all, SingleAnnotation-method
 - (copy_all-SingleAnnotation-method), [68](#)
- copy_all-AnnotationFunction-method, [67](#)
- copy_all-dispatch, [68](#)
- copy_all-SingleAnnotation-method, [68](#)
- cutree, [117](#)
- decorate_annotation, [15](#), [28](#), [69](#), [212](#), [213](#)
- decorate_column_dend, [70](#)
- decorate_column_names, [70](#)
- decorate_column_title, [71](#)
- decorate_dend, [70](#), [72](#), [75](#)
- decorate_dimnames, [70](#), [71](#), [73](#), [75](#), [76](#)
- decorate_heatmap_body, [74](#), [115](#)
- decorate_row_dend, [75](#)
- decorate_row_names, [75](#)
- decorate_row_title, [76](#)
- decorate_title, [71](#), [76](#), [77](#)
- default_axis_param, [21](#), [24](#), [27](#), [29](#), [30](#), [33](#), [34](#), [39](#), [42](#), [78](#)
- default_get_type, [78](#), [164](#)
- dend_heights, [80](#)
- dend_xy, [80](#), [110](#)
- dendrogram, [13](#), [50](#), [79](#), [80](#), [110](#), [116](#)
- dendrogramGrob, [79](#), [110](#)
- density, [82](#)
- densityHeatmap, [7](#), [81](#)
- dim.Heatmap, [83](#)
- dist, [84](#), [116](#)
- dist2, [84](#)
- draw (draw-dispatch), [85](#)
- draw, AnnotationFunction-method
 - (draw-AnnotationFunction-method), [84](#)

- draw, Heatmap-method
 - (draw-Heatmap-method), 86
- draw, HeatmapAnnotation-method
 - (draw-HeatmapAnnotation-method), 87
- draw, HeatmapList-method
 - (draw-HeatmapList-method), 88
- draw, Legends-method
 - (draw-Legends-method), 93
- draw, SingleAnnotation-method
 - (draw-SingleAnnotation-method), 94
- draw-AnnotationFunction-method, 84
- draw-dispatch, 85
- draw-Heatmap-method, 86
- draw-HeatmapAnnotation-method, 87
- draw-HeatmapList-method, 88
- draw-Legends-method, 93
- draw-SingleAnnotation-method, 94
- draw_annotation
 - (draw_annotation-Heatmap-method), 95
- draw_annotation, Heatmap-method
 - (draw_annotation-Heatmap-method), 95
- draw_annotation-Heatmap-method, 95
- draw_annotation_legend
 - (draw_annotation_legend-HeatmapList-method), 96
- draw_annotation_legend, HeatmapList-method
 - (draw_annotation_legend-HeatmapList-method), 96
- draw_annotation_legend-HeatmapList-method, 96
- draw_dend (draw_dend-Heatmap-method), 97
- draw_dend, Heatmap-method
 - (draw_dend-Heatmap-method), 97
- draw_dend-Heatmap-method, 97
- draw_dimnames
 - (draw_dimnames-Heatmap-method), 98
- draw_dimnames, Heatmap-method
 - (draw_dimnames-Heatmap-method), 98
- draw_dimnames-Heatmap-method, 98
- draw_heatmap_body
 - (draw_heatmap_body-Heatmap-method), 99
- draw_heatmap_body, Heatmap-method
 - (draw_heatmap_body-Heatmap-method), 99
- draw_heatmap_body-Heatmap-method, 99
- draw_heatmap_legend
 - (draw_heatmap_legend-HeatmapList-method), 100
- draw_heatmap_legend, HeatmapList-method
 - (draw_heatmap_legend-HeatmapList-method), 100
- draw_heatmap_legend-HeatmapList-method, 100
- draw_heatmap_list
 - (draw_heatmap_list-HeatmapList-method), 101
- draw_heatmap_list, HeatmapList-method
 - (draw_heatmap_list-HeatmapList-method), 101
- draw_heatmap_list-HeatmapList-method, 101
- draw_title (draw_title-dispatch), 101
- draw_title, Heatmap-method
 - (draw_title-Heatmap-method), 102
- draw_title, HeatmapList-method
 - (draw_title-HeatmapList-method), 103
- draw_title-dispatch, 101
- draw_title-Heatmap-method, 102
- draw_title-HeatmapList-method, 103
- Extract.AnnotationFunction ([.AnnotationFunction]), 221
- Extract.comb_mat ([.comb_mat]), 221
- Extract.gridtext ([.gridtext]), 222
- Extract.Heatmap ([.Heatmap]), 223
- Extract.HeatmapAnnotation ([.HeatmapAnnotation]), 223
- Extract.HeatmapList ([.HeatmapList]), 224
- Extract.SingleAnnotation ([.SingleAnnotation]), 225
- extract_comb, 103, 144
- filter_types, 118
- frequencyHeatmap, 104
- full_comb_code, 106
- get_color_mapping_list
 - (get_color_mapping_list-HeatmapAnnotation-method), 107
- get_color_mapping_list, HeatmapAnnotation-method
 - (get_color_mapping_list-HeatmapAnnotation-method), 107
- get_color_mapping_list-HeatmapAnnotation-method, 107
- get_legend_param_list
 - (get_legend_param_list-HeatmapAnnotation-method), 108

- get_legend_param_list, HeatmapAnnotation-method
(get_legend_param_list-HeatmapAnnotation-method),
108
- getXY_in_parent_vp, 106
- gpar, 14, 115, 201
- GRanges, 48, 160
- grid.annotation_axis, 108
- grid.boxplot, 109
- grid.dendrogram, 97, 110, 110
- grid.draw, 94, 109, 111
- grid.draw.Legends, 111
- grid.grabExpr, 90
- grid.picture, 32
- grid.raster, 32
- grid.text, 43
- grid.textbox, 111
- grob, 17, 20, 79, 93, 96, 100, 111, 125, 128,
137, 138, 140, 149, 206, 215
- grobHeight, 206
- grobWidth, 206
- gt_render, 112, 112, 222
- hclust, 116, 135
- Heatmap, 74, 82, 105, 113, 119, 120, 135, 139,
150, 164, 165, 170, 208
- Heatmap-class, 119
- Heatmap3D, 105, 120
- heatmap_legend_size
(heatmap_legend_size-HeatmapList-method),
125
- heatmap_legend_size, HeatmapList-method
(heatmap_legend_size-HeatmapList-method),
125
- heatmap_legend_size-HeatmapList-method,
125
- HeatmapAnnotation, 15, 16, 21, 22, 24, 25,
27–30, 32–34, 36, 39, 41–43, 46, 54,
117, 121, 122, 123, 135, 139, 177,
208, 209
- HeatmapAnnotation-class, 123
- HeatmapList, 124
- HeatmapList-class, 124
- height.AnnotationFunction, 126
- height.Heatmap, 126
- height.HeatmapAnnotation, 127
- height.HeatmapList, 128
- height.Legends, 128
- height.SingleAnnotation, 129
- height<- .AnnotationFunction
(heightAssign.AnnotationFunction),
129
- height<- .HeatmapAnnotation
(heightAssign.HeatmapAnnotation),
130
- height<- .SingleAnnotation
(heightAssign.SingleAnnotation),
130
- heightAssign.AnnotationFunction, 129
- heightAssign.HeatmapAnnotation, 130
- heightAssign.SingleAnnotation, 130
- heightDetails.annotation_axis, 131
- heightDetails.legend, 132
- heightDetails.legend_body, 132
- heightDetails.packed_legends, 133
- heightDetails.textbox, 133
- hist, 105
- ht_global_opt, 134
- ht_opt, 92, 93, 134, 134
- ht_size, 136
- image_resize, 118
- is_abs_unit, 137
- Legend, 20, 53, 54, 93, 96, 100, 111, 125, 128,
137, 140, 149, 166, 215
- Legends, 140
- Legends-class, 140
- length.HeatmapAnnotation, 141
- length.HeatmapList, 141
- list_components, 142
- list_to_matrix, 142
- loess, 34
- make_column_cluster
(make_column_cluster-Heatmap-method),
143
- make_column_cluster, Heatmap-method
(make_column_cluster-Heatmap-method),
143
- make_column_cluster-Heatmap-method,
143
- make_comb_mat, 59, 60, 63, 104, 144, 165,
174, 187, 188, 201, 204, 208, 221
- make_layout (make_layout-dispatch), 146
- make_layout, Heatmap-method
(make_layout-Heatmap-method),
146
- make_layout, HeatmapList-method
(make_layout-HeatmapList-method),
147
- make_layout-dispatch, 146
- make_layout-Heatmap-method, 146
- make_layout-HeatmapList-method, 147

- make_row_cluster
 - (make_row_cluster-Heatmap-method), 151
- make_row_cluster, Heatmap-method
 - (make_row_cluster-Heatmap-method), 151
- make_row_cluster-Heatmap-method, 151
- map_to_colors
 - (map_to_colors-ColorMapping-method), 152
- map_to_colors, ColorMapping-method
 - (map_to_colors-ColorMapping-method), 152
- map_to_colors-ColorMapping-method, 152
- max, 118
- max_text_height, 153, 154
- max_text_width, 153, 154
- mean, 118
- merge_dendrogram, 50, 155

- names.HeatmapAnnotation, 156
- names.HeatmapList, 156
- names<-HeatmapAnnotation
 - (namesAssign.HeatmapAnnotation), 157
- namesAssign.HeatmapAnnotation, 157
- ncol.Heatmap, 157
- nobs.AnnotationFunction, 158
- nobs.HeatmapAnnotation, 158
- nobs.SingleAnnotation, 159
- normalize_comb_mat, 159
- normalize_genomic_signals_to_bins, 160
- nrow.Heatmap, 162

- oncoPrint, 7, 38, 163, 205
- options, 136
- order_comb_mat, 165
- order_dendrogram, 50

- packLegend, 20, 93, 111, 125, 128, 139, 140, 166, 215
- pct_v_pct (%v%), 225
- pheatmap, 167, 168–170
- pindex, 170
- plot.Heatmap, 171
- plot.HeatmapAnnotation, 172
- plot.HeatmapList, 172
- PostScriptTrace, 32
- prepare (prepare-Heatmap-method), 173
- prepare, Heatmap-method
 - (prepare-Heatmap-method), 173
- prepare-Heatmap-method, 173
- print_comb_mat, 174

- re_size
 - (re_size-HeatmapAnnotation-method), 176
- re_size, HeatmapAnnotation-method
 - (re_size-HeatmapAnnotation-method), 176
- re_size-HeatmapAnnotation-method, 176
- read.chromInfo, 48
- readJPEG, 32
- readPicture, 32
- readPNG, 32
- readTIFF, 32
- reorder.dendrogram, 116
- restore_matrix, 174, 175
- richtext_grob, 112
- row_anno_barplot, 177
- row_anno_boxplot, 178
- row_anno_density, 179
- row_anno_histogram, 179
- row_anno_points, 180
- row_anno_text, 181
- row_dend (row_dend-dispatch), 181
- row_dend, Heatmap-method
 - (row_dend-Heatmap-method), 182
- row_dend, HeatmapList-method
 - (row_dend-HeatmapList-method), 182
- row_dend-dispatch, 181
- row_dend-Heatmap-method, 182
- row_dend-HeatmapList-method, 182
- row_order (row_order-dispatch), 183
- row_order, Heatmap-method
 - (row_order-Heatmap-method), 184
- row_order, HeatmapList-method
 - (row_order-HeatmapList-method), 184
- row_order-dispatch, 183
- row_order-Heatmap-method, 184
- row_order-HeatmapList-method, 184
- rowAnnotation, 117, 123, 177, 178–181

- seekViewport, 69, 74, 77
- segmentsGrob, 79
- set_component_height
 - (set_component_height-Heatmap-method), 185
- set_component_height, Heatmap-method
 - (set_component_height-Heatmap-method), 185
- set_component_height-Heatmap-method, 185
- set_component_width
 - (set_component_width-Heatmap-method),

- 186
- set_component_width, Heatmap-method
(set_component_width-Heatmap-method),
186
- set_component_width-Heatmap-method,
186
- set_name, [144](#), [160](#), [187](#)
- set_name<- (set_nameAssign), [187](#)
- set_nameAssign, [187](#)
- set_size, [144](#), [188](#)
- show (show-dispatch), [190](#)
- show, AnnotationFunction-method
(show-AnnotationFunction-method),
[188](#)
- show, ColorMapping-method
(show-ColorMapping-method), [189](#)
- show, Heatmap-method
(show-Heatmap-method), [190](#)
- show, HeatmapAnnotation-method
(show-HeatmapAnnotation-method),
[191](#)
- show, HeatmapList-method
(show-HeatmapList-method), [192](#)
- show, SingleAnnotation-method
(show-SingleAnnotation-method),
[192](#)
- show-AnnotationFunction-method, [188](#)
- show-ColorMapping-method, [189](#)
- show-dispatch, [190](#)
- show-Heatmap-method, [190](#)
- show-HeatmapAnnotation-method, [191](#)
- show-HeatmapList-method, [192](#)
- show-SingleAnnotation-method, [192](#)
- SingleAnnotation, [15](#), [121](#), [193](#), [194](#), [196](#)
- SingleAnnotation-class, [195](#)
- size.AnnotationFunction, [196](#)
- size.HeatmapAnnotation, [197](#)
- size.SingleAnnotation, [197](#)
- size<- .AnnotationFunction
(sizeAssign.AnnotationFunction),
[198](#)
- size<- .HeatmapAnnotation
(sizeAssign.HeatmapAnnotation),
[198](#)
- size<- .SingleAnnotation
(sizeAssign.SingleAnnotation),
[199](#)
- sizeAssign.AnnotationFunction, [198](#)
- sizeAssign.HeatmapAnnotation, [198](#)
- sizeAssign.SingleAnnotation, [199](#)
- smartAlign, [200](#)
- smartAlign2, [200](#)
- str.comb_mat, [201](#)
- subset_gp, [201](#)
- subset_matrix_by_row, [202](#)
- subset_no, [202](#)
- subset_vector, [203](#)
- summary.Heatmap, [203](#)
- summary.HeatmapList, [204](#)
- t.comb_mat, [144](#), [204](#)
- test_alter_fun, [205](#)
- textbox_grob, [44](#), [111](#), [112](#), [133](#), [205](#), [220](#)
- textGrob, [153](#), [154](#)
- unify_mat_list, [164](#), [207](#)
- unit, [13](#), [20](#), [31](#), [34](#), [36](#), [39](#), [40](#), [43](#), [45](#), [53](#),
[64–67](#), [78](#), [115–117](#), [122](#), [125](#),
[129–131](#), [133](#), [137](#), [138](#), [149](#), [153](#),
[154](#), [166](#), [176](#), [185](#), [186](#), [194](#), [198](#),
[199](#), [206](#), [210–212](#), [216–218](#), [220](#)
- UpSet, [207](#), [209–213](#)
- upset_left_annotation, [210](#)
- upset_right_annotation, [208](#), [211](#)
- upset_top_annotation, [208](#), [212](#)
- viewport, [85](#), [87](#), [95](#), [97–99](#), [102](#)
- width.AnnotationFunction, [213](#)
- width.Heatmap, [214](#)
- width.HeatmapAnnotation, [214](#)
- width.HeatmapList, [215](#)
- width.Legends, [215](#)
- width.SingleAnnotation, [216](#)
- width<- .AnnotationFunction
(widthAssign.AnnotationFunction),
[216](#)
- width<- .HeatmapAnnotation
(widthAssign.HeatmapAnnotation),
[217](#)
- width<- .SingleAnnotation
(widthAssign.SingleAnnotation),
[217](#)
- widthAssign.AnnotationFunction, [216](#)
- widthAssign.HeatmapAnnotation, [217](#)
- widthAssign.SingleAnnotation, [217](#)
- widthDetails.annotation_axis, [218](#)
- widthDetails.legend, [219](#)
- widthDetails.legend_body, [219](#)
- widthDetails.packed_legends, [220](#)
- widthDetails.textbox, [220](#)